DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 184 312 **FL 010 988**

TITLE	Chinese-Mandarin: Basic Course. Volume I, Lessons 1-15.
INSTITUTION	Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.
PUB DATE	May 64
NOTE	318p.; For related documents, see FL 010 988-992 and FL 011 000-010.
AVAILABLE FROM	Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 ($5.60; accompanying cassettes $11.20)
LANGUAGE	Chinese; English
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC13 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods; *Grammar; Instructional Materials; *Mandarin Chinese; *Military Science; Pattern Drills (Language); Pronunciation Instruction; *Second Language Instruction; Second Language Learning; Translation; Visual Aids; *Vocabulary Skills
IDENTIFIERS	*Dialogs (Language Learning)

ABSTRACT

This is the first of 16 volumes of audiolingual classroom instruction in Mandarin Chinese. The course is designed to train native English speakers to Level 3 Foreign Service Institute proficiency in comprehension and speaking, and to Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Mandarin. The introduction to Volume I discusses the main features of Chinese pronunciation, including consonants and vowels, initial and final sounds, stress, and tone. Instructional materials in the 15 lessons include dialogues, pictorial aids, vocabulary lists, grammar analyses, translation exercises, and pronunciation drills. Mandarin words are presented in phonetic transcription only. The emphasis of the course is on military science. (JB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED184312

01CM47

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME I
LESSONS 1-15

U S DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
DLI
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

MAY 1964

FL010988

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

THIS PUBLICATION IS TO BE USED PRIMARILY IN SUPPORT OF TRAINING MILITARY PERSONNEL AS PART OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE PROGRAM (RESIDENT AND NON-RESIDENT). INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THESE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO:

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE, FLC
NON-RESIDENT OPERATIONS DIVISION
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA. 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR DLIFLC STUDENTS, SINCE MILITARY PERSONNEL MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIALS OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL TO THEIR MISSION. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS-WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT-IN DLIFLC MATERIALS IS NOT TO BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER, OR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

Volume I

Lessons 1 - 15

May 1964

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Reprinted (C) February 1975
Reprinted (C) April 1978

PREFACE

The Chinese-Mandarin Course, consisting of 180 lessons in 16 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute and approved for publication by the Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese-Mandarin. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Main Features of Chinese Pronunciation . . . . . i-v
Abbreviations for Parts of Speech. vi
Lesson 1 1
Lesson 2 17
Lesson 3 35
Lesson 4 55
Lesson 5 75
Lesson 6 95
Lesson 7 117
Lesson 8 139
Lesson 9 163
Lesson 10. 183
Lesson 11. 203
Lesson 12. 225
Lesson 13. 247
Lesson 14. 271
Lesson 15. 297
Vocabulary Index 321

Main Features of Chinese Pronunciation

Speech sounds cannot helpfully be described; they must be illustrated. But it is useful for a student to know in advance the kinds of sounds which he will have to master.

Consonant Sound and Vowel Sound

In English, if two words sound almost but not quite the same, they differ either in a consonant sound or in a vowel sound (or, of course, in both). Thus pin and bin are similar, but they begin with different consonants; bit and bid are similar, but end with different consonants; pin and pan are similar, but they have different vowels.

In Chinese, also, two words which sound almost but not quite alike may differ in consonant sounds or in vowel sounds. Thus ná (to take) and lá (to slash) begin with different consonants, while ná and ní (mud) have different vowels.

Initial and Final

Instead of talking simply about 'vowels', 'consonants', and 'tones' in Chinese, it is convenient to regard every syllable as composed of at most three parts: an initial, a final, and a tone. Initials are consonants; if there is no consonant at the beginning of a syllable, as in say the syllable à, we speak of a zero initial. Finals are vowels or sequences of vowels and consonants; far fewer consonants occur as parts of finals than occur as initials.

Stress

Longer English words may have exactly the same vowels and consonants, and yet be different because they are stressed differently. Thus the noun *permit* has stress on the first syllable, the verb *permit* has stress on the second syllable, but otherwise the two words sound the same. This also applies in Chinese: *dungsyi* with stress on the first syllable 'dūngsyi' means 'thing', with stress on both syllables, 'dūngsyī' means 'east and west'.

Tone

English-speaking people should have little difficulty in pronouncing Chinese sounds, for very few of them cannot be found in the English language. One unique feature in the Chinese language, which does not exist in the English language, is the characteristic tone, or movement of pitch, which is an integral part of each Chinese syllable. In English, for instance, the word "you" carries the same meaning, no matter whether spoken with a rising inflection as in "Is it you?" or with a falling inflection as in "I'll show you." In Chinese, the word "*you*" means "grief" when pronounced with a high-level inflection, it means "oil" when pronounced with a high-rising inflection, it means "have" when pronounced with a low-rising inflection, it means "again" when pronounced with a high-falling inflection.

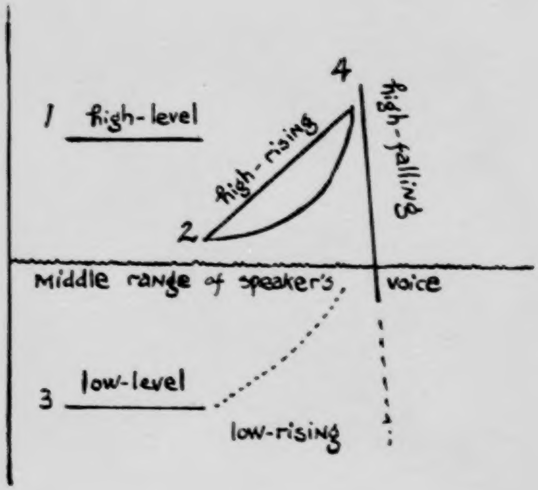
In the Peiping dialect (Mandarin) there are four tones. These tones vary relatively to the range of the speaker's voice. The four tones enunciated by a soprano voice may be about one octave higher than those enunciated by a tenor voice, but they maintain the same distinctive characteristics. These four tones are as follows:

NO.	DESCRIPTION	SYMBOL	EXAMPLE
1	high and level	¯	gāu
2	high and rising	´	máng
3	(a) by itself or at the end of a phrase-- low and rising	ˇ	hǎu
	(b) before another syllable with third tone-- the syllable is pronounced in the second tone		hěn hǎu → hén hǎu
	(c) before syllables other than third tone-- low with no rise		nǐ gāu nǐ máng nǐ lèi
4	falling from high to low	`	lèi

The tone mark is placed on the vowel (if there is only one) or on the first vowel of a syllable:

nà	hē
nài	hēi

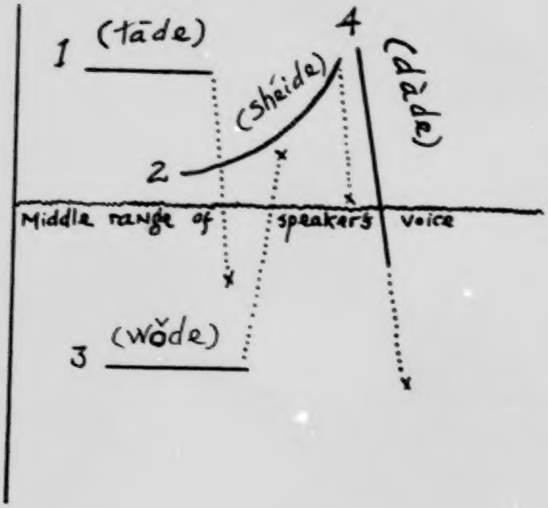
FIGURE 1


1 high-level
4
high-rising
high-falling
2
Middle range of speaker's voice
3 low-level
low-rising

Vertical line indicates the range of the speaker's voice which may total between a sixth and an octave.

Chinese one-syllable words when they are pronounced by themselves have one of the tones described above, but when they are pronounced in series with other syllables they may be more or less unstressed. When this occurs, the first, second and fourth tones may be pitched slightly lower than when receiving stress or all four tones may be very short and often cut off sharply at the end. In certain cases, syllables have so little stress that they lose their original tone entirely: such syllables are toneless and will be written without any marks. The pitch of the toneless syllable depends on the tone of position of the pitch of the toneless syllable after one of the four tones in two-syllable combinations.

FIGURE 2


1
(tāde)
2
(shéide)
4
(dàde)
3
(wǒde)
Middle range of speakers voice

ABBREVIATIONS FOR PARTS OF SPEECH

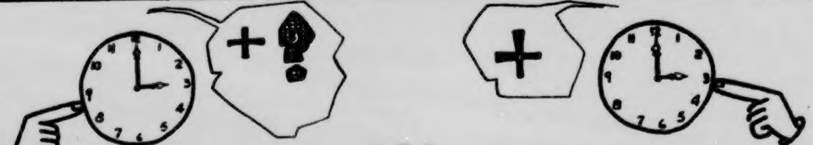
A	Adverb
AV	Auxillary Verb
BF	Boundform
CV	Co-Verb
EV	Equational Verb
IE	Idiomatic Expression
M	Measure
MA	Movable Adverb
N	Noun
NU	Number
P	Particle
PW	Placeword
RV	Resultative Verb
RVE	Resultative Verb Ending
SP	Specifier
SV	Stative Verb
TW	Timeword
V	Verb
VO	Verb-Object Combination

LESSON I

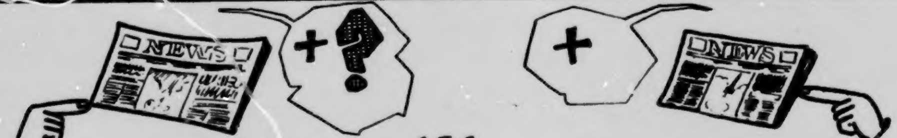
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syānsheng:	Jèi shr̀ jūng ma?	Teacher:	Is this a clock?
	Sywésheng:	Jèi shr̀ jūng.	Student:	This is a clock.
	Syānsheng:	Jèi shr̀ bàu ma?	Teacher:	Is this a newspaper?
	Sywésheng:	Jèi shr̀ bàu.	Student:	This is a newspaper.
	Syānsheng:	Nèi shr̀ byǎu ma?	Teacher:	Is that a watch?
	Sywésheng.	Nèi shr̀ byǎu.	Student:	That is a watch.
	Syānsheng:	Nèi shr̀ shū ma?	Teacher:	Is that a book?
	Sywésheng:	Nèi shr̀ shū.	Student:	That is a book.
2.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ mén ma?	T:	Is this a door?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ mén.	S:	That is a door.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ chyán ma?	T:	Is this money?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ chyán.	S:	That is money.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ bǐ ma?	T:	Is that a pen?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ bǐ.	S:	This is a pen.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shū ma?	T:	Is that a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	S:	This is a book.

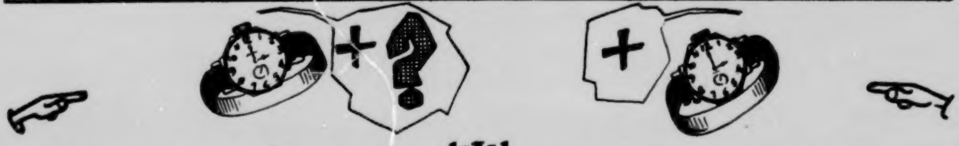
LESSON 1



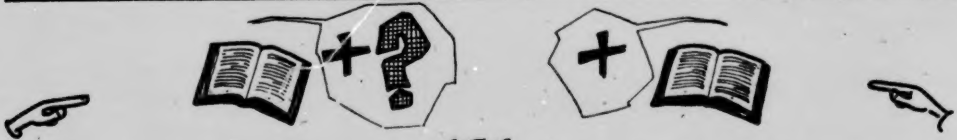
1-I-1



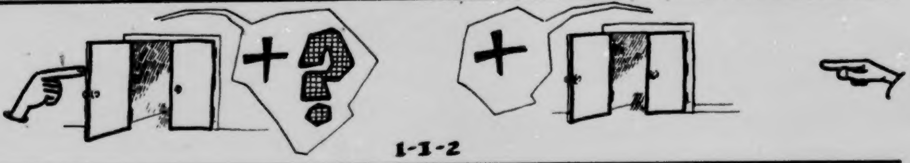
1-I-1



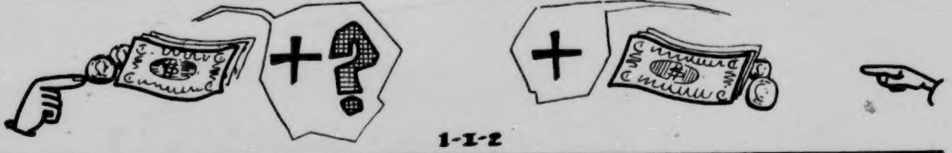
1-I-1



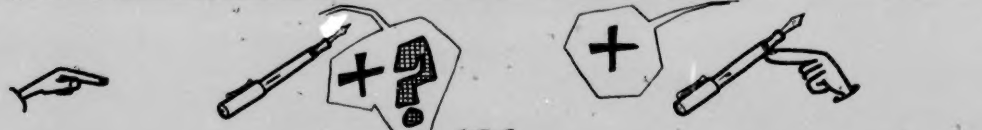
1-I-1



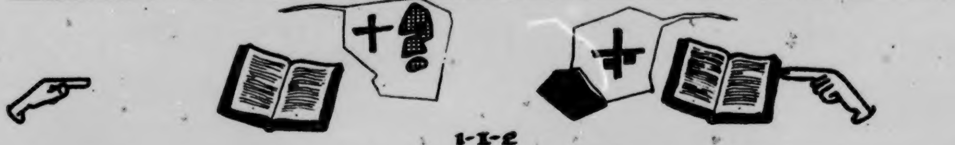
1-I-2



1-I-2



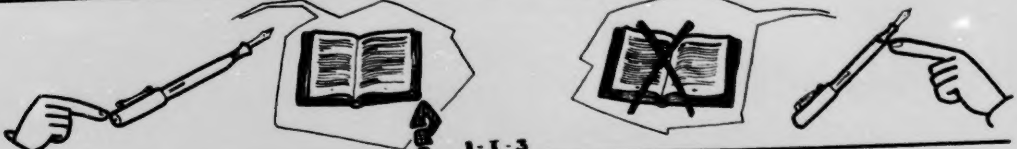
1-I-2



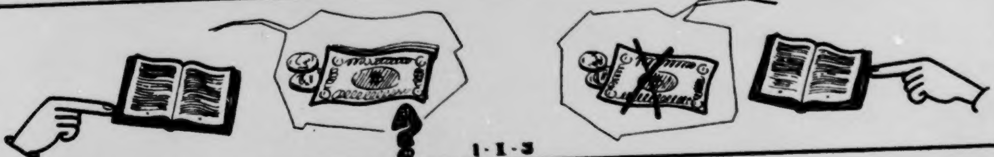
1-I-2

3.	Syān:	Jèi búshr̀ shū ma?	T:	Isn't this a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ shū.	S:	This isn't a book.
	Syān:	Jèi búshr̀ chyán ma?	T:	Isn't this money?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ chyán.	S:	This isn't money.
	Syān:	Nèi búshr̀ bǐ ma?	T:	Isn't that a pen?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ bǐ.	S:	That isn't a pen.
	Syān:	Nèi búshr̀ bàu ma?	T:	Isn't that a newspaper?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ bàu.	S:	That isn't a newspaper.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ jūng ma?	T:	Is this a clock?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ jūng.	S:	That isn't a clock.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ mén ma?	T:	Is this a door?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ mén.	S:	That isn't a door.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ byǎu ma?	T:	Is that a watch?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ byǎu.	S:	This isn't a watch.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shù ma?	T:	Is that a tree?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ shù.	S:	This isn't a tree.

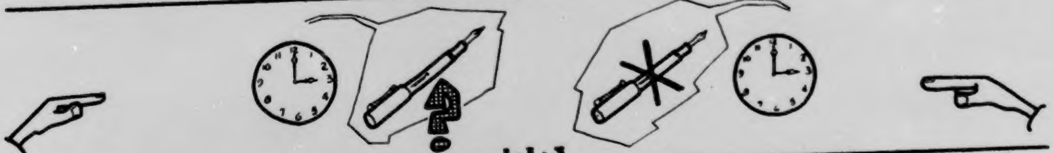
LESSON 1



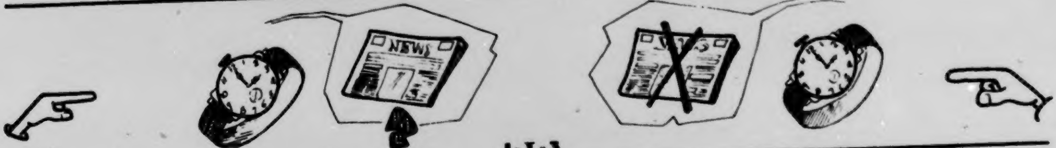
1-I-3



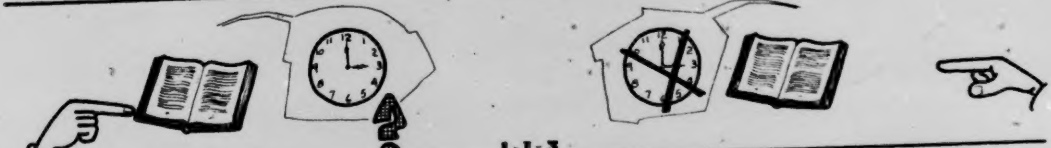
1-I-3



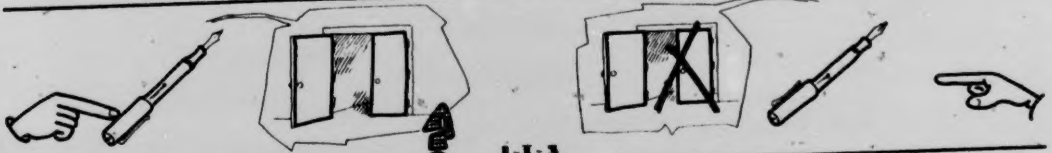
1-I-3



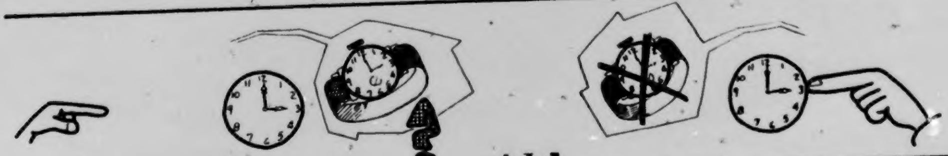
1-I-3



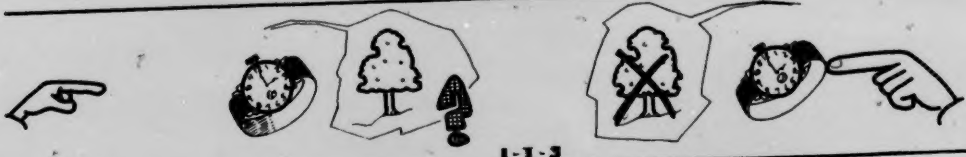
1-I-3



1-I-3



1-I-3



1-I-3

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān: Nǐ hǎu ma?	How are you?
	Sywé: Hǎu. Nǐ hǎu ma?	Fine. How are you?
	Syān: Hǎu.	Fine.
2.	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
	Sywé: Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
	Syān: Nèi shr̀ chyán ma?	Is that money?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ chyán.	That is money.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ bǐ ma?	Is this a pen?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ bǐ.	That's a pen.
	Syān: Nèi shr̀ bàu ma?	Is that a newspaper?
	Sywé: Jèi shr̀ bàu.	This is a newspaper.
	Syān: Jèi búshr̀ jūng ma?	Isn't this a clock?
	Sywé: Jèi búshr̀ jūng.	This isn't a clock.
	Syān: Nèi búshr̀ mén ma?	Isn't that a door?
	Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ mén.	That isn't a door.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ byǎu ma?	Is this a watch?
	Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ byǎu.	That isn't a watch.
	Syān: Nèi shr̀ shù ma?	Is that a tree?
	Sywé: Jèi búshr̀ shù.	This isn't a tree.

3. Vocabulary

1.	bàu	N:	newspaper
2.	bǐ	N:	pen, pencil, any writing implement
3.	bù-	P:	not (prefix to words of the verb group)
4.	byǎu	N:	watch
5.	chyán	N:	money
6.	hǎu	SV:	be good, well
7.	jèi	SP:	this
8.	jūng	N:	clock
9.	ma	P:	(sentence suffix to simple questions)
10.	mén	N:	door
11.	nèi	SP:	that
12.	nǐ	N:	you (singular)
13.	shr̀	EV:	to be (is, am, are, etc.)
14.	shū	N:	book
15.	shù	N:	tree

III Grammar Analysis

1. Descriptive Sentence

In a descriptive sentence a stative verb (SV) is used to express the characterization rather than the action of the subject. A stative verb (SV) describes a quality or condition, as hǎu. In English the adjective 'good' is preceded by the verb 'to be', whereas in Chinese it is omitted, because it is embedded in the stative verb.

N	SV	
Wǒ	hǎu.	I am fine.
Nǐ	hǎu.	You are fine.

2. Equational Sentence

In an equational sentence, the equational verb (EV) as shr̀, is used to identify the person or thing. It tells "what" the person or thing is as required by the subject. It connects the subject with the substantive in the predicate and must explain the subject.

N	EV	N	
Jèi	shr̀	shū.	This is a book.
Nèi	shr̀	byǎu.	That is a watch.

3. Simple and common type of questions

a. The question is made by adding the particle ma to a statement.

Statement:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
Question:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?

b. A question may take the negative form of the simple type.

Statement:	Jèi bushr̀ shū.	This is not a book.
Question:	Jèi búshr̀ shū ma?	Isn't this a book?

c. The choice type question, will be introduced in the next lesson, is formed by coupling the positive and negative forms of a verb.

Statement:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
Question:	Jèi shr̀ shū búshr̀?	Is this a book or not?

4. Simple and common types of answers

The simplest way of answering a question is by repeating the verb of the question in its positive or negative form:

Question:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
Answers:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
	Jèi búshr̀ shū.	This is not a book.

5. Specifiers (SP)

A specifier (SP) serves to designate or point out the person or thing referred to, as; jèi, nèi.

6. Nouns and Pronouns (N)

A noun in Chinese does not change its form for number and a verb does not change its form for the number or person of the subject.

shū	book, books
bǐ	pen, pens, writing implement or implements
byǎu	watch, watches
shr̀	am, are, is

All pronouns behave like nouns and are classified as nouns (N).

7. Particles (P)

Particles are elements which may be added to a word, phrase or sentence to indicate some particular function or aspect. For example, the particle bù- is prefixed to verbs to negate the action of the verb; ma is added to the end of a sentence to form the simplest type of question, no matter whether it is a descriptive sentence or an equational sentence, and whether it is in positive or in the negative.

SP	Neg-	EV	N	P	
Jèi		shr̀	shū.		This is a book.
Jèi		shr̀	shū	ma?	Is this a book?
Jèi	búshr̀		shū	ma?	Isn't this a book?

Note bù as a particle does not stand alone, and is pronounced in the falling tone; except when it is prefixed to a verb in the falling tone, it is then pronounced in the rising tone.

Tā bùhǎu.	He is bad.
Jèi búshr̀ shū.	This is not a book.
Nèi búshr̀ byǎu.	That isn't a watch.

8. Raised Low-level Tone

Two syllables with low-rising tone never occur consecutively unless there is some pause between them. When a syllable which carries low-level tone is followed, without pause, by another low-level tone, then the first of the two syllables is instead pronounced with a high-rising tone.

Wǒ hǎu. (Wó hǎu)	I am fine.
Nǐ hǎu (Ní hǎu)	You are fine.
Hǎu byǎu.(Háu byǎu)	A good watch.
Byǎu hǎu.(Byáu hǎu)	The watch is good.

Although it is written with the low-rising tone mark on both syllables, the first syllable is pronounced identical with the high-rising tone.

9. Neutral Tones

In utterance longer than a single syllable, some syllables are toneless. Such syllables are almost always closely joined to the immediately preceding syllable, as the particle ma in the following sentences.

Nǐ hǎu ma?	How are you?
Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ chyán ma?	Is this money?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ chyán.	This isn't money.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ bǐ ma?	Is this a pen?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ bǐ.	This is a pen.
2.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ shū.	This isn't a book.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
3.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ byǎu ma?	Is that a watch?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ byǎu.	That isn't a watch.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shù ma?	Is that a tree?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ shù.	That is a tree.
4.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ jūng ma?	Is that a clock?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ jūng.	That is a clock.
5.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ mén ma?	Is that a door?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ mén.	That is a door.
6.	Syān:	Nèi búshr̀ bǐ ma?	Isn't that a pen?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ bǐ.	This isn't a pen.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ bàu ma?	Is that a newspaper?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ bàu.	This is a newspaper.
7.	Syān:	Nèi búshr̀ jūng ma?	Isn't that a clock?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ jūng.	This isn't a clock.

	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is that a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
8.	Syān:	Jèi búshr̀ chyán ma?	Isn't this money?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ chyán.	That isn't money.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ mén ma?	Is this a door?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ mén.	That is a door.
9.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ byǎu ma?	Is this a watch?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ byǎu.	That isn't a watch.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ shū.	That is a book.
10.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is that a book?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ shū.	This is a book.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shū ma?	Is this a book?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ shū.	That isn't a book.
11.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ bǐ ma?	Is that a pen?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ bǐ.	This is a pen.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ bǐ ma?	Is this a pen?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ bǐ.	That isn't a pen.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

mā	má	mǎ	mà
nā	ná	nǎ	nà
lā	lá	lǎ	là
fā	fá	fǎ	fà
sā	sá	sǎ	sà

2.

nā, lā	lā, nā
má, ná	ná, má
sǎ, mǎ	mǎ, sǎ
fà, là	là, fà
jūng, chyán	chyán, jūng
jūng, bǐ	bǐ, jūng
jūng, bàu	bàu, jūng
shū, mén	mén, shū
shū, byǎu	byǎu, shū
shū, shù	shù, shū
chyán, byǎu	byǎu, chyán
chyán, bàu	bàu, chyán
byǎu, hǎu	hǎu, byǎu
nǐ, hǎu	hǎu, nǐ
bǐ, shù	shù, bǐ

3.

Jèi shr̀ shū.	Jèi shr̀ chyán.	Jèi shr̀ bǐ.	Jèi búshr̀ bàu.
Jèi shr̀ bàu.	Jèi shr̀ bǐ.	Jèi shr̀ chyán.	Jèi búshr̀ shū.
Nèi shr̀ shū.	Nèi shr̀ chyán.	Nèi shr̀ bǐ.	Nèi búshr̀ bàu.
Nèi shr̀ bàu.	Nèi shr̀ bǐ.	Nèi shr̀ chyán.	Nèi búshr̀ shū.

Jèi shr̀ jūng. Jèi shr̀ mén. Jèi shr̀ byǎu. Jèi búshr̀ shù.

Jèi shr̀ shù. Jèi shr̀ byǎu. Jèi shr̀ mén. Jèi búshr̀ jūng.

Nèi shr̀ jūng. Nèi shr̀ mén. Nèi shr̀ byǎu. Nèi búshr̀ shù.

Nèi shr̀ shù. Nèi shr̀ byǎu. Nèi shr̀ mén. Nèi búshr̀ jūng.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) Is this a book?
2) That isn't a book; that's a newspaper.
3) Isn't this a watch?
4) That isn't a watch; that's a clock.
5) Is this money?
6) That is money.
7) Is this a pen?
8) That isn't a pen.
9) How are you?
10) Fine. How are you?

2. Conversation

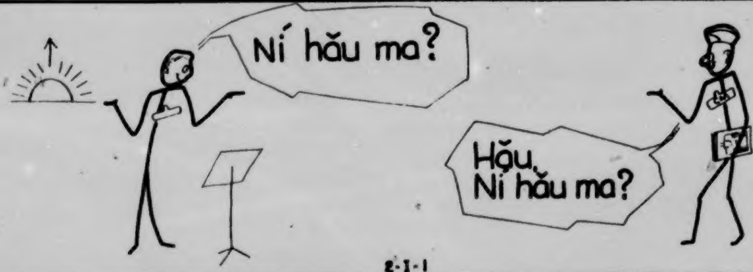
1) Nǐ hǎu ma?
2) Jèi shr̀ shū ma?
3) Jèi shr̀ chyán ma?
4) Jèi búshr̀ bǐ ma?
5) Nèi shr̀ bàu ma?
6) Nèi shr̀ mén ma?
7) Nèi shr̀ jūng ma?
8) Nèi búshr̀ byǎu ma?
9) Jèi búshr̀ chyán ma?
10) Jèi búshr̀ jūng ma?

LESSON 2

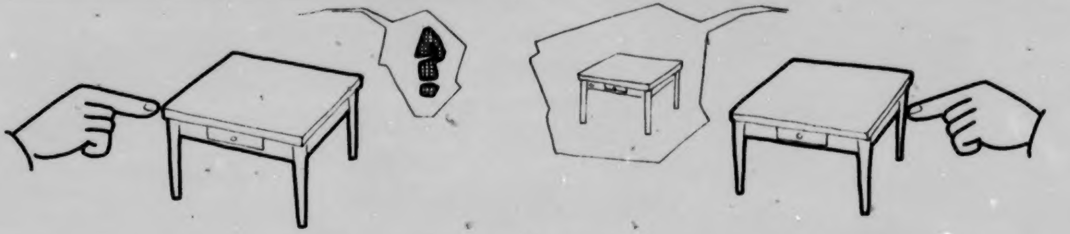
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syānsheng:	Dzǎu. Nǐ hǎu ma?	Teacher:	Morning! How are you?
	Sywésheng:	Hǎu. Nǐ hǎu ma?	Student:	Fine. How are you?
	Syānsheng:	Hǎu.	Teacher:	Fine.
2.	Syānsheng:	Jèi shr̀ shémma?	Teacher:	What is this?
	Sywésheng:	Jèi shr̀ jwōdz.	Student:	This is a table.
	Syānsheng:	Nèi shr̀ shémma?	Teacher:	What is that?
	Sywésheng:	Nèi shr̀ yǐdz.	Student:	That is a chair.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shémma?	T:	What is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ hwàr.	S:	That is a picture.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shémma?	T:	What is that?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ jř.	S:	This is paper.

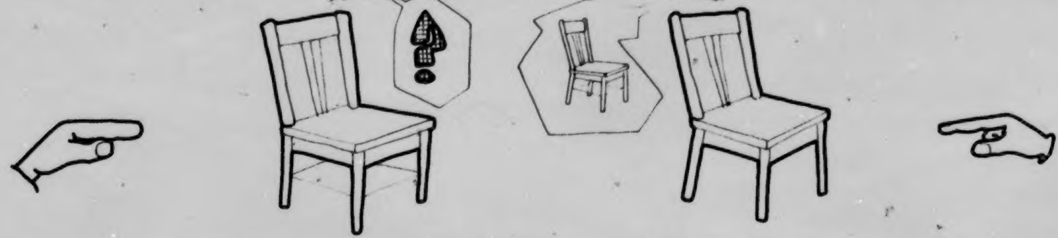
LESSON 2


Ní hău ma?
Hău,
Ni hău ma?

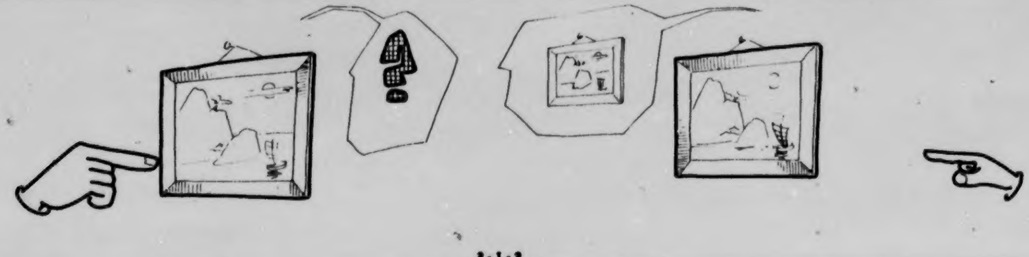
2-1-1



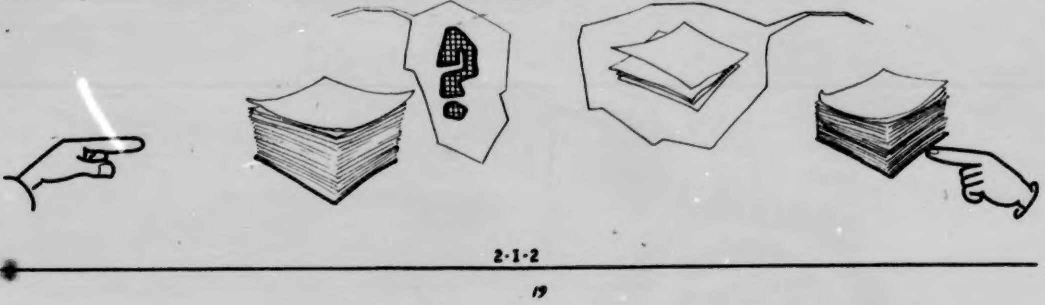
2-1-2



2-1-2



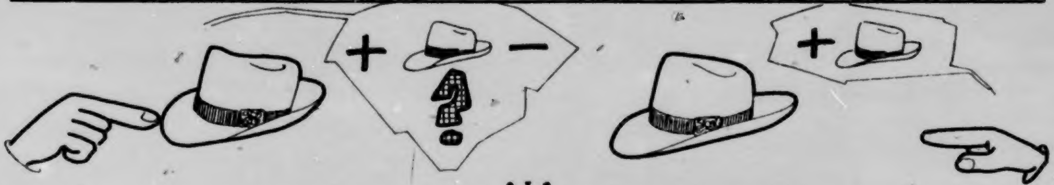
2-1-2



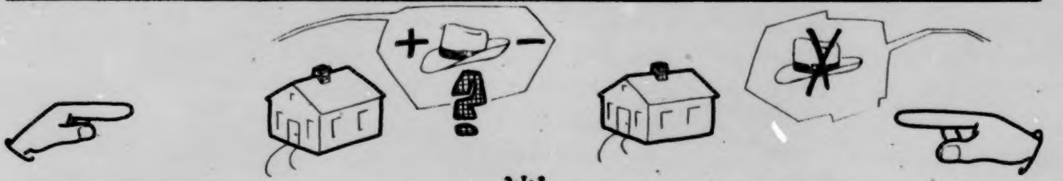
2-1-2

3.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ màudz búshr̀?	Is this a hat or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ màudz.	That is a hat.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ màudz búshr̀?	Is that a hat or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ màudz.	That isn't a hat.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shémma?	What is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ fángdz.	That is a house.
4.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ chyāng?	Is that a gun or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ chyāng.	That is a gun.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ shǒuchyāng?	Is that a pistol or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ shǒuchyāng.	That isn't a pistol.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shémma chyāng?	What kind of gun is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ bùchyāng.	That is a rifle.

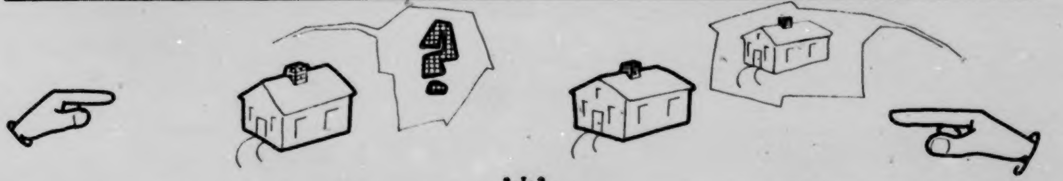
LESSON 2



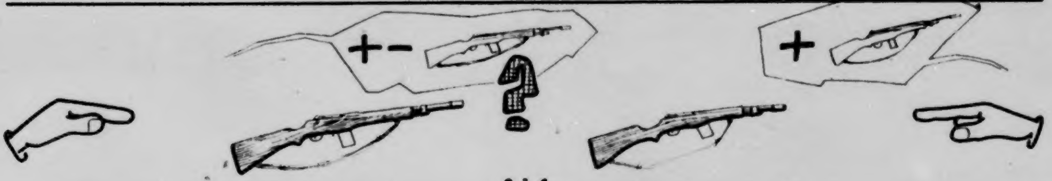
2-I-3



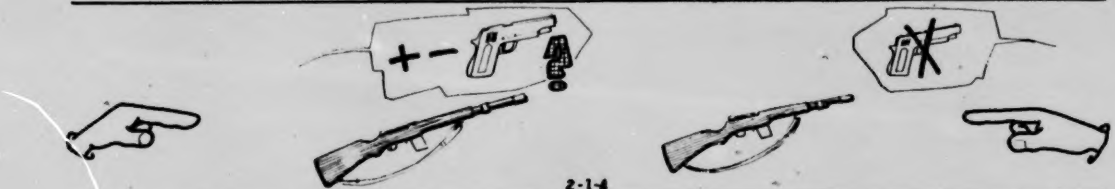
2-I-3



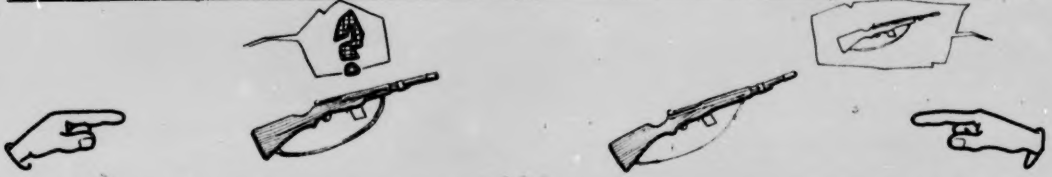
2-I-3



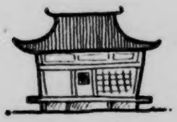
2-1-4

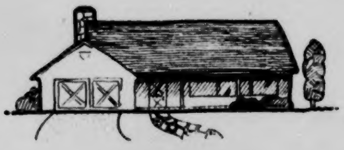


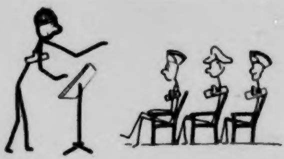
2-1-4



2-1-4







II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān: Dzǎu. Nǐ hǎu ma?	Morning! How are you?
	Sywé: Hǎu. Nǐ hǎu ma?	Fine, how are you?
	Syān: Hǎu. Jèi shr̀ shémma?	Fine. What is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ chyāng.	That is a gun.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shémma chyāng?	What kind of gun is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng.	That is a pistol.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng ma?	Is this an American pistol?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng.	That is an American pistol.
	Syān: Nèi shr̀ shémma chyāng?	What kind of gun is that?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Měigwo bùchyāng.	That is an American rifle.
2.	Syān: Jèi shr̀ jwōdz ma?	Is this a table?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ jwōdz.	That is a table.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ jwōdz búshr̀?	Is this a table or not?
	Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ jwōdz.	That isn't a table.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shémma?	What is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ yǐdz.	That is a chair.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ Měigwo yǐdz ma?	Is this an American chair?
	Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ Měigwo yǐdz.	That isn't an American chair.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shémma yǐdz?	What kind of chair is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo yǐdz.	That is, a Chinese chair.
3.	Syān: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz ma?	Is that a Chinese house?

Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz.	That isn't a Chinese house.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ búshr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz?	Is this a Chinese house or not?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz.	That is a Chinese house.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ fángdz búshr̀?	Is this a house or not?
Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ fángdz.	That isn't a house.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ shémma?	What is this?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ mén.	That is a door.

4. Vocabulary

16.	bùchyāng	N:	rifle
17.	chyāng	N:	small arms
18.	dzǎu	IE:	good morning
19.	fángdz	N:	house
20.	hwàr	N:	picture
21.	jř	N:	paper
22.	Jūnggwo	N:	China
23.	jwōdz	N:	table
24.	màudz	N:	hat
25.	Měigwo	N:	America, United States of
26.	shémma	N:	what
27.	shǒuchyāng	N:	pistol
28.	syānsheng	N:	teacher; Mister; Sir; (polite form for husband)
29.	sywésheng	N:	student
30.	yǐdz	N:	chair

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Subordination

A fundamental principle in Chinese sentence structure is that the modifier precedes the word modified. This is known as "subordination". Subordination applies to both nominal and verbal expressions and to clauses as well as to words. The following are noun to noun subordination. The first noun modifies the following noun.

N	N	
Měigwo	shū	American books
Jūnggwo	bǐ	Chinese writing brushes
Jūnggwo	syānsheng	Chinese teachers
Měigwo	sywésheng	American students

2. Question Words

A question is made by using a question word in the sentence. In English, the question word in a question always stands in the beginning of the sentence, but in Chinese, it occupies the same position in the sentence as the word or words which replace it in the answer.

Jèi shr̀ shémma?	What is this?
Jèi shr̀ jwōdz.	This is a table.
Nèi shr̀ shémma?	What is that?
Nèi shr̀ fángdz.	That is a house.
Jèi shr̀ shémma shū?	What book is this?

Jèi shr̀ Měigwo shū.	This is an American book.
Nèi shr̀ shémma bǐ?	What writing instrument is that?
Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo bǐ.	That is a Chinese writing brush.

3. Choice Type of Question

A question is made by coupling the positive and negative forms of the verb. The negative form of the verb can be placed either right after the positive form or at the end of the question. When the choice type of construction is used in forming a question, the particle ma is no more used.

Jèi shr̀ shū búshr̀?	Is this a book or not?
Nèi shr̀ yǐdz búshr̀?	Is that a chair or not?
Jèi shr̀ búshr̀ shū?	Is this a book or not?
Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ yǐdz?	Is that a chair or not?

Translate the following:

1) Good morning!
2) Good morning; how are you?
3) What is this?
4) This is a rifle.
5) Is this an American rifle?
6) This is an American rifle.

7) Is that an American house?

8) Is that a Chinese hat?

9) Is this Chinese paper?

10) That is not Chinese paper.

Change the following questions into choice type of questions:

1) Nèi shr̀ jwōdz ma?

2) Jèi shr̀ Měigwo jūng ma?

3) Nèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo yǐdz ma?

4) Jèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo shū ma?

5) Měigwo bǐ hǎu ma?

6) Jūnggwo byǎu hǎu ma?

7) Nèi búshr̀ Měigwo bùchyāng ma?

8) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo shǒuchyāng ma?

9) Nèi shr̀ màudz ma?

10) Měigwo màudz hǎu ma?

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ hwàr búshr̀?	Is this a picture or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ hwàr.	This isn't a picture.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ jř búshr̀?	Is this paper or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ jř.	This is paper.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ jwōdz búshr̀?	Is that a table or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ jwōdz.	That isn't a table.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ yǐdz búshr̀?	Is that a chair or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ yǐdz.	That is a chair.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ fángdz búshr̀?	Is this a house or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ fángdz.	That isn't a house.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ màudz búshr̀?	Is this a hat or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ màudz.	That is a hat.
2.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ shǒuchyāng?	Is that a pistol or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ shǒuchyāng.	That isn't a pistol.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ bùchyāng?	Is that a rifle or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ bùchyāng.	That is a rifle.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ chyāng?	Is that a gun or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ chyāng.	This isn't a gun.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ màudz?	Is that a hat or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ màudz.	This is a hat.
3.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shémma?	What is this?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ hwàr.	This is a picture.

Syān: Jèi shr̀ shémma hwàr?	What kind of picture is this?
Sywé: Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo hwàr.	This is a Chinese picture.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ shémma?	What is that?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ fángdz.	That is a house.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ shémma fángdz?	What kind of house is that?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Mĕigwo fángdz.	That is an American house.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ shémma?	What is that?
Sywé: Jèi shr̀ yĭdz.	This is a chair.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ shémma yĭdz.	What kind of chair is that?
Sywé: Jèi shr̀ Mĕigwo yĭdz.	This is an American chair.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ Mĕigwo màudz búshr̀?	Is that an American hat or not?
Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ Mĕigwo màudz.	That is not an American hat.
Syān: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo màudz búshr̀?	Is that a Chinese hat or not?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo màudz.	That is a Chinese hat.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo jwōdz búshr̀?	Is this a Chinese table or not?
Sywé: Jèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo jwōdz.	This isn't a Chinese table.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ Mĕigwo jwōdz búshr̀?	Is this an American table or not?
Sywé: Jèi shr̀ Mĕigwo jwōdz.	This is an American table.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ Mĕigwo yĭdz búshr̀?	Is this an American chair or not?
Sywé: Nèi búshr̀ Mĕigwo yĭdz.	That is not an American chair.
Syān: Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo yĭdz búshr̀?	Is this a Chinese chair or not?
Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo yĭdz.	That is a Chinese chair.

5.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ chyāng búshr̀?	Is this a gun or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ chyāng.	That is a gun.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ bùchyāng búshr̀?	Is this a rifle or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ bùchyāng.	That is not a rifle.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shémma chyāng?	What kind of gun is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng.	That is a pistol.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ jř búshr̀?	Is that paper or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ jř.	This is paper.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo jř búshr̀?	Is that Chinese paper or not?
	Sywé:	Jèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo jř.	This is not Chinese paper.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shémma jř?	What kind of paper is that?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ Měigwo jř.	This is American paper.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ hwàr búshr̀?	Is this a picture or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ hwàr.	That is a picture.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Měigwo hwàr búshr̀?	Is this an American picture or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ Měigwo hwàr.	That is not an American picture.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shémma hwàr?	What kind of picture is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo hwàr.	That is a Chinese picture.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. mēi méi měi mèi   hā, nā   nā, hā
bēi béi běi bèi   má, méi   méi, má
hēi héi hěi hèi   bǎu, běi   běi, bǎu
sān sán sǎn sàn   hàu, nàu   nàu, hàu
bāu báu bǎu bàu
bā bá bǎ bà

2. jūng, jwōdz   jwōdz, jūng
chyán, fángdz   fángdz, chyán
bǐ, yǐdz   yǐdz, bǐ
shù, màudz   màudz, shù
shū, jwōdz   jwōdz, shū
mén, fángdz   fángdz, mén
byǎu, yǐdz,   yǐdz, byǎu
bàu, màudz   màudz, bàu

3. Jèi shr̀ jwōdz. Jèi shr̀ fángdz. Jèi shr̀ yǐdz. Jèi shr̀ màudz.
Nèi shr̀ màudz. Nèi shr̀ yǐdz. Nèi shr̀ fángdz. Nèi shr̀ jwōdz.
Jèi shr̀ shémma? Nèi shr̀ hwàr. Nèi shr̀ shémma? Jèi shr̀ jř.
Nèi shr̀ shémma? Jèi shr̀ hwàr. Jèi shr̀ shémma? Nèi shr̀ jř.

Jèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng ma?   Nèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng.
Nèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng ma?   Jèi shr̀ shǒuchyāng.
Jèi shr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng ma?   Nèi shr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng.
Nèi shr̀ fángdz ma?   Jèi shr̀ fángdz.
Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz ma?   Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) Is this a book or not?
2) That isn't a book, that's a newspaper.
3) Isn't that a pen?
4) That is a pen.
5) What is this?
6) That is a picture.
7) What kind of pen is that?
8) What book is that?
9) How are you?
10) Good morning, sir.

2. Conversation

1) Jèi shr̀ jwōdz ma?
2) Nèi shr̀ yǐdz ma?
3) Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ chyāng?
4) Nèi shr̀ shémma chyāng?
5) Nèi shr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng ma?
6) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo màudz ma?
7) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz búshr̀?
8) Jèi shr̀ shémma?
9) Jèi shr̀ búshr Jūnggwo bùchyāng?
10) Nèi shr̀ Měigwo bùchyāng búshr̀?
11) Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo shǒuchyāng búshr̀?
12) Jèi shr̀ búshr̀ Měigwo màudz?

13) Nǐ shr̀ Měigwo sywésheng ma?

14) Nǐ shr̀ Měigwo syānsheng ma?

15) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo yǐdz búshr̀?

16) Nèi shr̀ búshr̀ Měigwo jwōdz?

17) Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo màudz ma?

18) Jèi shr̀ búshr̀ Měigwo shǒuchyāng?

19) Nèi shr̀ Měigwo jř ma?

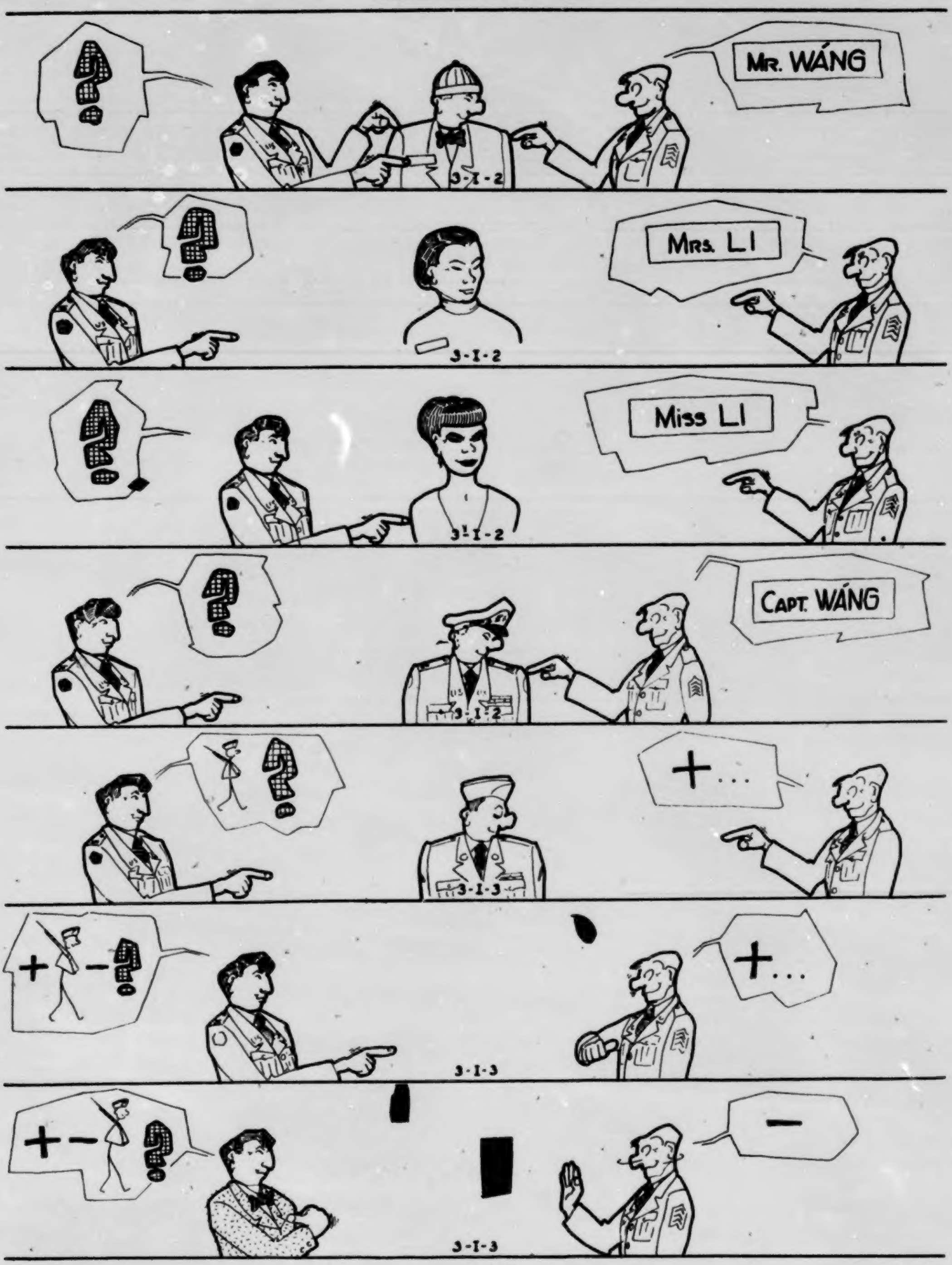
20) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz ma?

LESSON 3

I. Structural Dialogues

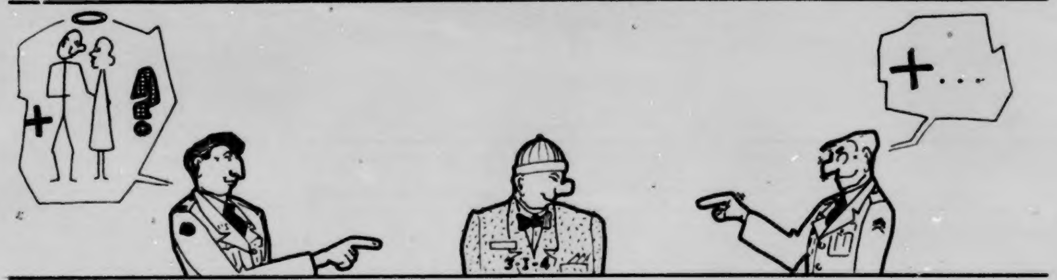
1.	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng, nǐ hǎu ma?	How are you Mr. Wáng?
	Sywé:	Hǎu, syèsye. Lǐ Syānsheng, nǐ hǎu ma?	Fine, thank you. How are you, Mr. Lǐ?
	Syān:	Hǎu, syèsye.	Fine, thank you.
2.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is this?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ Wáng Syānsheng.	This is Mr. Wáng.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Lǐ Tàitai.	That is Mrs. Lǐ.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Lǐ Syáujye.	That is Miss Lǐ.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is that?
	Sywé:	Jèi shr̀ Wáng Shàngwèi.	This is Captain Wáng.
3.	Syān:	Tā shr̀ bīng ma?	Is he a soldier?
	Sywé:	Tā shr̀ bīng.	He is a soldier.
	Syān:	Nǐ shr̀ bīng búshr̀?	Are you a soldier or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ shr̀ bīng.	I am a soldier.
	Syān:	Wǒ shr̀ búshr̀ bīng?	Am I a soldier or not?
	Sywé:	Nǐ búshr̀ bīng.	You aren't a soldier.

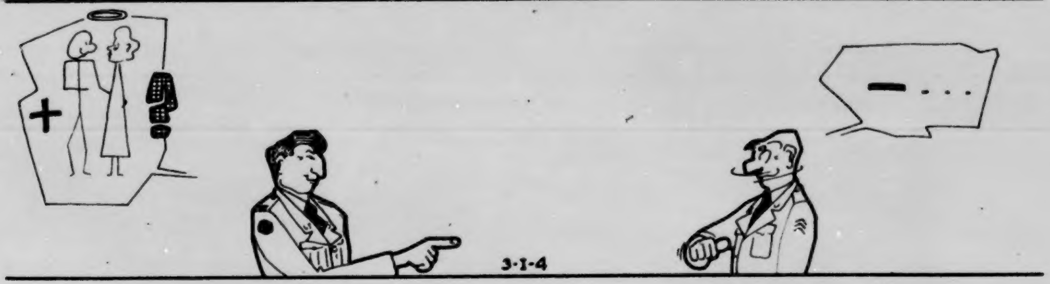
LESSON 3

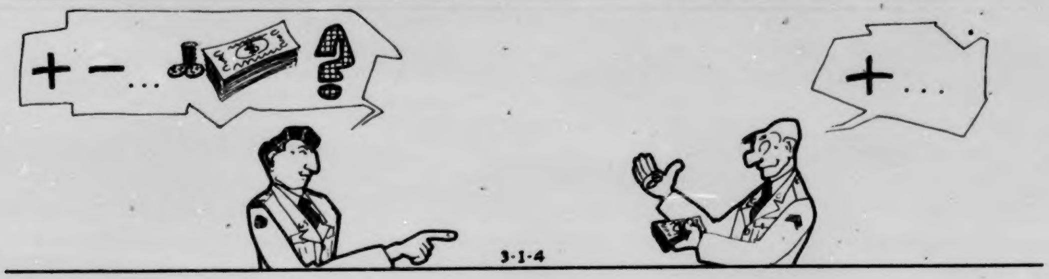

MR. WÁNG
3-I-2
MRS. LI
3-I-2
MISS LI
3-I-2
CAPT. WÁNG
3-I-2
+...
3-I-3
+ −
+...
3-I-3
+ −
−
3-I-3

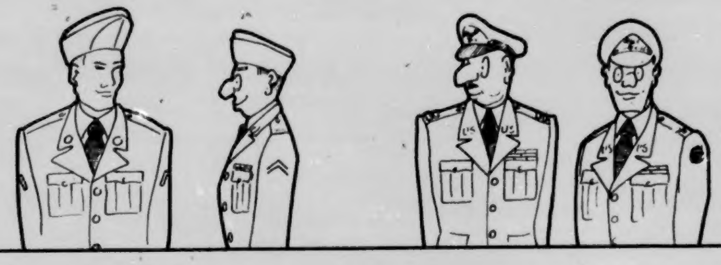
4. Syān: Tā yǒu tàitai ma?	Does he have a wife?
Sywé: Tā yǒu tàitai.	He has a wife.
Syān: Nǐ yǒu tàitai méiyǒu?	Do you have a wife or not?
Sywé: Wǒ méiyǒu tàitai.	I don't have a wife.
Syān: Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chyán?	Do you have money or not?
Sywé: Wǒ yǒu chyán.	I have money.

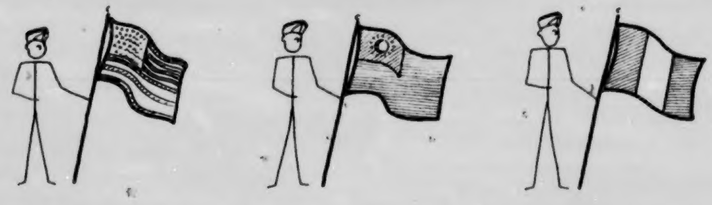
LESSON 3











II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Lǐ Syānsheng, nǐ hǎu ma?	How are you, Mr. Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Hǎu. Wáng Syānsheng, nǐ hǎu ma?	Fine. How are you, Mr. Wáng?
	Syān:	Hǎu. Syèsye.	Fine. Thank you.
	Sywé:	Nǐ shr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi búshr̀?	Are you Captain Lǐ or not?
	Syān:	Wǒ búshr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi, tā shr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi.	I am not Captain Lǐ. He is Captain Lǐ.
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is that?
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ Lǐ Syáujye.	That is Miss Lǐ.
	Sywé:	Tā búshr̀ Lǐ Tàitai ma?	Isn't she Mrs. Lǐ?
	Syān:	Tā búshr̀ Lǐ Tàitai.	She isn't Mrs. Lǐ.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ shr̀ Jūnggwo rén búshr̀?	Are you a Chinese or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén.	I am not a Chinese.
	Syān:	Nǐ shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Are you an American?
	Sywé:	Wǒ shr̀ Měigwo rén.	I am an American.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu tàitai méiyǒu?	Do you have a wife or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ méiyǒu tàitai.	I don't have a wife.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu shū méiyǒu?	Do you have books or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu shū.	I have books.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu shémma shū?	What kind of books do you have?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Jūnggwo shū.	I have Chinese books.
	Syān:	Nǐ méiyǒu Měigwo shū ma?	Don't you have American books?
	Sywé:	Wō méiyǒu Měigwo shū.	I don't have American books.
3.	Syān:	Tā shr̀ Fàgwo bīng ma?	Is he a French soldier?
	Sywé:	Tā búshr̀ Fàgwo bīng.	He isn't a French soldier.

Syān: Tā shr̀ shéi?	Who is he?
Sywé: Tā shr̀ Měigwo jyūngwān.	He is an American Officer.
Syān: Tā shr̀ Shàngwèi búshr̀?	Is he a Captain or not?
Sywé: Tā shr̀ Shàngwèi.	He is a Captain.
Syān: Tā shr̀ Wáng Shàngwèi ma?	Is he Captain Wáng?
Sywé: Tā shr̀ Wáng Shàngwèi.	He is Captain Wáng.
Syān: Wáng Shàngwèi yǒu tàitai méiyǒu?	Does Captain Wáng have a wife or not?
Sywé: Wáng Shàngwèi yǒu tàitai.	Captain Wáng has a wife.
Syān: Wáng Tàitai shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Is Mrs. Wáng an American?
Sywé: Wáng Tàitai búshr̀ Měigwo rén.	Mrs. Wáng isn't an American.

4. Vocabulary

31.	bīng	N:	soldier
32.	Fàgwo	N:	France, French
33.	jyūngwān	N:	officer (Armed Forces)
34.	Lǐ	N:	(surname)
35.	méi	P:	(negative particle for yǒu)
36.	méiyǒu	V:	do not have (usually pronounced méiyǒu in the middle of a sentence)
37.	rén	N:	person
38.	shàngwèi	N:	captain (military)
39.	shéi	N:	who
40.	syáujye	N:	Miss, young lady
41.	syèsye	IE:	thank you
42.	tā	N:	he, she, him, her
43.	tàitai	N:	Mrs; Madam; (polite for) wife
44.	Wáng	N:	(surname)
45.	wǒ	N:	I, me
46.	yǒu	V:	to have, has

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Verbs (V)

Chinese verbs are not inflected, therefore, the Chinese say 'I is', 'you is', 'he is', 'we is', 'I have', 'you have', 'he have', etc. One verb form suffices, regardless of person, number or tense.

Wǒ shr̀ syānsheng.	I am a teacher.
Nǐ shr̀ sywésheng.	You are a student.
Tā shr̀ jyūngwān.	He is an officer.
Wǒ yǒu Fàgwo shǒuchyāng.	I have a French pistol.
Nǐ yǒu Meigwo shǒuchyāng.	You have an American pistol.
Tā yǒu Jūnggwo shǒuchyāng.	He has a Chinese pistol.

2. Subject-Verb-Object Type

The normal construction of a Chinese sentence having a subject, a verb and an object, is the same as that in English: (SVO).

S V O	
Wǒ yǒu jūng; tā yǒu byǎu.	I have a clock; he has a watch.
Wǒ yǒu fángdz, tā yǒu jwōdz, yǐdz.	I have a house; he has tables and chairs.
Tă yǒu tàitai.	He has a wife.
Bīng yǒu bùchyāng.	Soldiers have rifles.

3. Names and Titles

Surnames precede titles in Chinese, instead of following them as in English. In speaking, the stress always comes on the surname.

Wáng Syānsheng	Mr. Wáng
Lǐ Tàitai	Mrs. Lǐ
Wáng Syáujye	Miss Wáng
Wáng Syānsheng, Wáng Tàitai	Mr. and Mrs. Wáng

4. *Méi*- and *bù*- Compared

Both *méi*- and *bù*- are negative particles. While *méi*- is a negative particle for *yǒu* (have), *bù*- is for *shr̀* (to be) and other verbs, and NEVER USED WITH *yǒu*. *Méiyǒu* (do not have) can be shortened to *méi* with the same meaning.

Wǒ búshr̀ Wáng Syānsheng.	I am not Mr. Wáng.
Tā méiyǒu chyán.	He has no money.
Nǐ búshr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Aren't you an American?
Wǒ méiyǒu shǒuchyāng.	I don't have a pistol.
Tā méi shū.	He doesn't have any books.

Translate the following:

1) Who is he?
2) He is Mr. Wáng.
3) Does Mr. Wáng have a wife?
4) Mr. Wáng has a wife.
5) Do Mr. and Mrs. Wáng have a house?
6) Mr. and Mrs. Wáng have a house.

7) Is Mr. Wáng an officer?

8) Mr. Wáng isn't an officer; he is a soldier.

9) Is Mrs. Wáng a Chinese?

10) Mrs. Wáng isn't a Chinese; Mrs. Wáng is an American.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ LĬ Syānsheng.	That is Mr. LĬ.
	Syān:	Tā shr̀ Fàgwo bīng búshr̀?	Is he a French soldier or not?
	Sywé:	Tā búshr̀ Fàgwo bīng.	He is not a French soldier.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéi?	Who is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Wáng Shàngwèi.	That is Captain Wáng.
	Syān:	Tā shr̀ Fàgwo jyūngwān búshr̀?	Is he a French officer or not?
	Sywé:	Tā búshr̀ Fàgwo jyūngwān.	He is not a French officer.
2.	Syān:	NĬ shr̀ Mĕigwo rén ma?	Are you an American?
	Sywé:	Wŏ shr̀ Mĕigwo rén.	I am an American.
	Syān:	Wŏ shr̀ búshr̀ Mĕigwo rén?	Am I an American or not?
	Sywé:	NĬ búshr̀ Mĕigwo rén.	You are not an American.
	Syān:	NĬ shr̀ Mĕigwo bīng ma?	Are you an American soldier?
	Sywé:	Wŏ shr̀ Mĕigwo bīng.	I am an American soldier.
	Syān:	Wŏ shr̀ búshr̀ Mĕigwo bīng?	Am I an American soldier or not?
	Sywé:	NĬ búshr̀ Mĕigwo bīng.	You are not an American soldier.
3.	Syān:	NĬ yŏu Mĕigwo bàu ma?	Do you have an American newspaper?
	Sywé:	Wŏ yŏu Mĕigwo bàu.	I have an American newspaper.
	Syān:	NĬ yŏu Fàgwo bàu méiyou?	Do you have a French newspaper or not?
	Sywé:	Wŏ méiyŏu Fàgwo bàu.	I don't have a French newspaper.

	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu Měigwo chyán ma?	Do you have American currency?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Měigwo chyán.	I have American currency.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu Fàgwo chyán méiyǒu?	Do you have French currency or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ méiyǒu Fàgwo chyán.	I don't have French currency.
4.	Syān:	Shéi yǒu Jūnggwo bǐ?	Who has a Chinese writing brush?
	Sywé:	Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo bǐ.	You have a Chinese writing brush.
	Syān:	Lǐ Tàitai méiyǒu Jūnggwo bǐ ma?	Doesn't Mrs. Lǐ have a Chinese writing brush?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Tàitai méiyǒu Jūnggwo bǐ.	Mrs. Lǐ doesn't have a Chinese writing brush.
	Syān:	Lǐ Tàitai búshr̀ Junggwo rén ma?	Isn't Mrs. Lǐ a Chinese?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Tàitai búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén.	Mrs. Lǐ isn't a Chinese.
	Syān:	Shèi yǒu Fàgwo hwàr?	Who has a French picture?
	Sywé:	Tā yǒu Fàgwo hwàr.	He has a French picture.
	Syān:	Wáng Syáujye méiyǒu Fàgwo hwàr ma?	Doesn't Miss Wáng have a French picture?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syáujye méiyou Fàgwo hwàr.	Miss Wáng doesn't have a French picture.
	Syān:	Wáng Syáujye búshr̀ Fàgwo rén ma?	Isn't Miss Wáng a Frenchwoman?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syáujye búshr̀ Fàgwo rén.	Miss Wáng isn't a Frenchwoman.
5.	Syān:	Shéi shr̀ Měigwo bīng?	Who is an American soldier?
	Sywé:	Wǒ shr̀ Měigwo bīng.	I am an American soldier.
	Syān:	Shéi yǒu Měigwo shǒuchyāng?	Who has an American pistol?

	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Měigwo shǒuchyāng.	I have an American pistol.
	Syān:	Shéi shr̀ Měigwo jyūngwān?	Who is an American officer?
	Sywé:	Wǒ shr̀ Měigwo jyūngwān.	I am an American officer.
	Syān:	Shéi yǒu Měigwo bùchyāng?	Who has an American rifle?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Měigwo bùchyāng.	I have an American rifle.
6.	Syān:	Wǒ yǒu Jūnggwo shū méiyǒu?	Do I have a Chinese book or not?
	Sywé:	Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo shū.	You have a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nǐ méiyǒu Jūnggwo shū ma?	Don't you have a Chinese book?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Jūnggwo shū.	I have a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Tā yǒu méiyǒu Jūnggwo shū?	Does he have a Chinese book or not?
	Sywé:	Tā méiyǒu Jūnggwo shū.	He doesn't have a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Wǒ yǒu Měigwo jř méiyǒu?	Do I have American paper or not?
	Sywé:	Nǐ yǒu Měigwo jř.	You have American paper.
	Syān:	Nǐ méiyǒu Měigwo jř ma?	Don't you have American paper?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu Měigwo jř.	I have American paper.
	Syān:	Tā yǒu méiyǒu Měigwo jř?	Does he have American paper or not?
	Sywé:	Tā méiyǒu Měigwo jř.	He doesn't have American paper.
7.	Syān:	Fàgwo tàitai yǒu Fàgwo fángdz méiyǒu?	Do French married women have French houses or not?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo tàitai yǒu Fàgwo fángdz.	French married women have French houses.
	Syān:	Fàgwo tàitai yǒu méiyǒu Měigwo fángdz.	Do French married women have American houses or not?

	Sywé:	Fàgwo tàitai méiyǒu Měigwo fángdz.	French married women don't have American houses.
	Syān:	Fàgwo syáujye yǒu Fàgwo màudz méiyǒu?	Do French young ladies have French hats or not?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo syáujye yǒu Fàgwo màudz.	French young ladies have French hats.
	Syān:	Fàgwo syáujye yǒu méiyǒu Měigwo màudz?	Do French young ladies have American hats?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo syáujye méiyǒu Měigwo màudz.	French young ladies don't have American hats.
8.	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu Jǔnggwo yǐdz ma?	Does Captain Lǐ have Chinese chairs?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngwèi méiyǒu Jūnggwo yǐdz.	Captain Lǐ doesn't have Chinese chairs.
	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngwèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén ma?	Isn't Captain Lǐ a Chinese?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngwèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén.	Captain Lǐ isn't a Chinese.
	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngwèi shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Is Captain Lǐ an American?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngwèi shr̀ Měigwo rén.	Captain Lǐ is an American.
	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng yǒu Měigwo jwōdz ma?	Does Mr. Wáng have an American table?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng méiyǒu Měigwo jwōdz.	Mr. Wáng doesn't have an American table.
	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng búshr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Isn't Mr. Wáng an American?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng búshr̀ Měigwo rén.	Mr. Wáng isn't an American.
	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng shr̀ Fàgwo rén búshr̀?	Is Mr. Wáng a Frenchman or not?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng shr̀ Fàgwo rén.	Mr. Wáng is a Frenchman.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. shā shá shǎ shà sāng, shāng shāng, sāng
tāu táu tǎu tàu méi, mái mái, méi
fāng fáng fǎng fàng shā, sǎ sǎ, shǎ
nāi nái nǎi nài lèi, lài lài, lèi
tāng táng tǎng tàng
tāi tái tǎi tài

2.

Jūnggwo bīng	Fàgwo bīng
Jūnggwo rén	Fàgwo rén
Jūnggwo jř	Fàgwo jř
Jūnggwo hwàr	Fàgwo hwàr
Fàgwo shū	Měigwo shū
Fàgwo chyán	Měigwo chyán
Fàgwo bǐ	Měigwo bǐ
Fàgwo bàu	Měigwo bàu
Jūnggwo jwōdz	Měigwo jwōdz
Jūnggwo fángdz	Měigwo fángdz
Jūnggwo yǐdz	Měigwo yǐdz
Jūnggwo màudz	Měigwo màudz

3.

Shéi yǒu shū? Tā yǒu shū.	Nǐ yǒu shémma? Wǒ yǒu bàu.
Tā yǒu shémma? Tā yǒu byǎu.	Nǐ yǒu byǎu ma? Wǒ yǒu byǎu.
Nǐ yǒu Fàgwo bàu ma?	Wǒ méiyǒu Fàgwo bàu.
Nǐ tàitai yǒu Fàgwo bàu ma?	Wǒ tàitai méiyou Fàgwo bàu.
Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu chyán ma?	Lǐ Shàngwèi méiyǒu chyán.

Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu Jūnggwo chyán ma?	Lǐ Shàngwèi méiyǒu Jūnggwo chyán.
Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu Jūnggwo chyán méiyou?	Lǐ Shàngwèi méiyǒu Jūnggwo chyán.
Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu méiyǒu Jūnggwo chyán?	Lǐ Shàngwèi méiyǒu Jūnggwo chyán.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) Who is this?

2) This is Mr. Wáng.

3) Does he have a wife?

4) He has a wife.

5) Is Mrs. Wáng a Chinese?

6) No, she is not. She is an American.

7) Is Mr. Wáng an officer?

8) Yes, he is a captain.

9) Do you have Chinese money?

10) No, I don't. I have American money.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo shū méiyǒu?

2) Nǐ yǒu Měigwo byǎu ma?

3) Jèi shr̀ shù búshr̀?

4) Tā yǒu shǔchyāng ma?

5) Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fángdz ma?

6) Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo hwàr méiyǒu?

7) Nǐ yǒu tàitai ma?

8) Tā shr̀ Fàgwo rén ma?

9) Shéi shr̀ jyūngwān?

10) Nǐ hǎu ma?

11) Tā yǒu tàitài méiyǒu?

12) Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu tàitài ma?

13) Wáng Syānsheng yǒu Měigwo bùchyāng méiyǒu?

14) Wǒ yǒu Jūnggwo shǒuchyāng ma?

15) Shéi shr̀ bīng?

16) Shéi shr̀ Měigwo shàngwèi?

17) Wáng Syáujye yǒu yǐdz ma?

18) Shéi shr̀ jyūngwān?

19) Nǐ shr̀ búshr̀ jyūngwān?

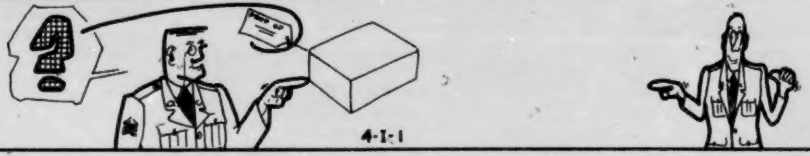
20) Shéi yǒu Měigwo màudz?

LESSON 4

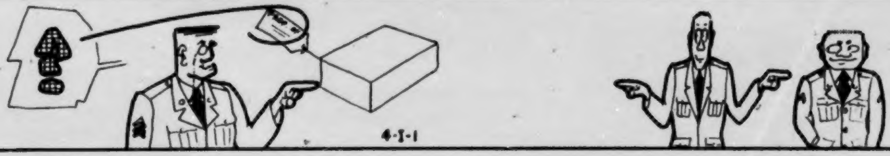
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shéide?	Whose is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ wǒde.	That is mine.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shéide?	Whose is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ tāde.	That is his.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ wǒde ma?	Is this mine?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ nǐde.	That is yours.
2.	Syān: Jèi shr̀ Lǐ Syānshengde ma?	Is this Mr. Lǐ's?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Lǐ Syānshengde.	That is Mr. Lǐ's.
	Syān: Nèi shr̀ Lǐ Syānshengde ma?	Is that Mr. Lǐ's?
	Sywé: Búshr, nèi shr̀ Lǐ Tàitaide.	No, that is not. That is Mrs. Lǐ's.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shéide?	Whose is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Wáng Syáujyede.	That is Miss Wáng's.
3.	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shéide chyán?	Whose money is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ wǒde chyán.	That is my money.
	Syān: Jèi shr̀ shéide màudz?	Whose hat is this?
	Sywé: Nèi shr̀ Wáng Tàitaide màudz.	That is Mrs. Wáng's hat.
	Syān: Wáng Tàitai shr̀ shéi?	Who is Mrs. Wáng?
	Sywé: Wáng Tàitai shr̀ Wáng Shàngwèide tàitai.	Mrs. Wáng is Captain Wáng's wife.

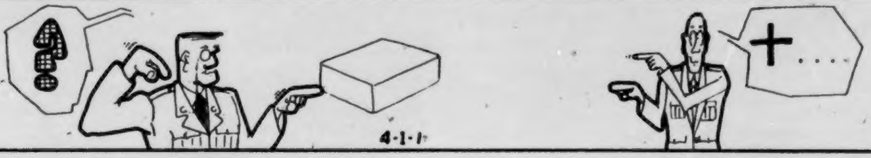
LESSON 4



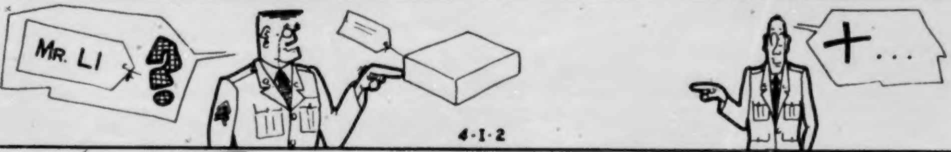
4-I-1



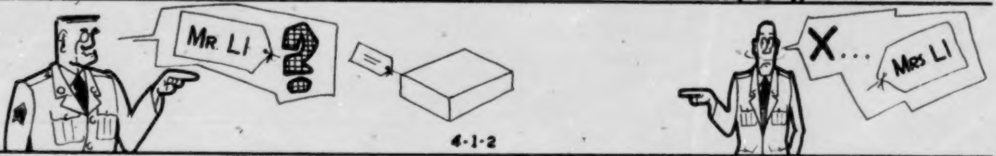
4-I-1



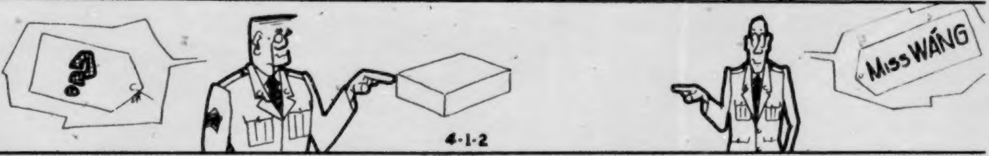
4-I-1



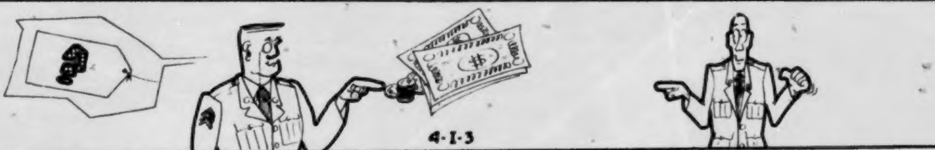
4-I-2


MR. LI
X...
MRS LI

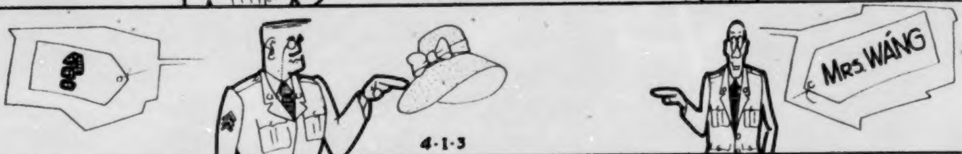
4-I-2



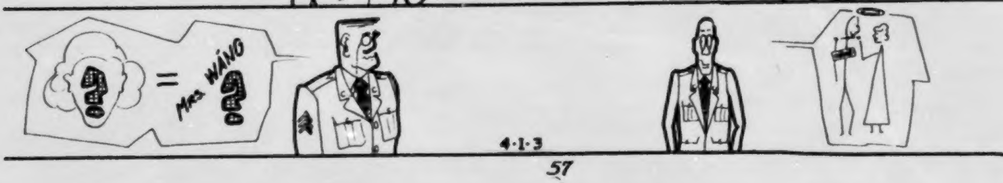
4-I-2



4-I-3



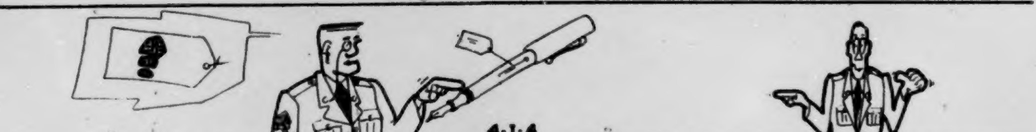
4-I-3



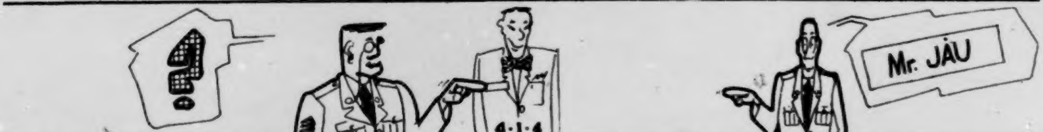
4-I-3

4.	Syān:	Jèige bĭ shr̀ shéide?	Whose pen is this?
	Sywé:	Nèige bĭ shr̀ wŏde.	That pen is mine.
	Syān:	Jèige rén shr̀ shéi?	Who is this man?
	Sywé:	Nèige rén shr̀ Jàu Syānsheng.	That man is Mr. Jàu.
	Syān:	Jèibĕn shū shr̀ shéide?	Whose book is this?
	Sywé:	Nèibĕn shū shr̀ tāde.	That book is his.
	Syān:	Jèige byău shr̀ wŏde ma?	Is this watch mine?
	Sywé:	Nèige byău shr̀ nĭde.	That watch is yours.
5.	Syān:	Nĭ nèige bĭ hău ma?	Is that pen of yours good?
	Sywé:	Wŏ nèige bĭ hău.	That pen of mine is good.
	Syān:	Nĭ nèibĕn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū ma?	Is that book of yours a Chinese book?
	Sywé:	Búshr̀, wŏ nèibĕn shū shr̀ Mĕigwo shū.	No, it isn't. That book of mine is an American book.
	Syān:	Tā nèige bàu shr̀ Mĕigwo bàu ma?	Is that newspaper of his an American newspaper?
	Sywé:	Tā nèige bàu shr̀ Mĕigwo bàu.	That newspaper of his is an American newspaper.
6.	Syān:	Nèige byău shr̀ shéide?	Whose watch is that?
	Sywé:	Shr̀ wŏde.	It's mine.
	Syān:	Jèige Mĕigwo màudz shr̀ shéide?	Whose American hat is this?
	Sywé:	Shr̀ tāde.	It's his.
	Syān:	Jèige shŏuchyāng shr̀ nĭde búshr̀?	Is this your pistol or not?
	Sywé:	Shr̀ wŏde.	It's mine.

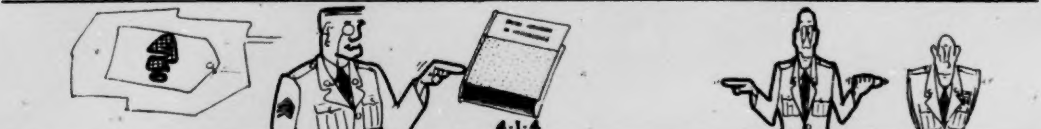
LESSON 4



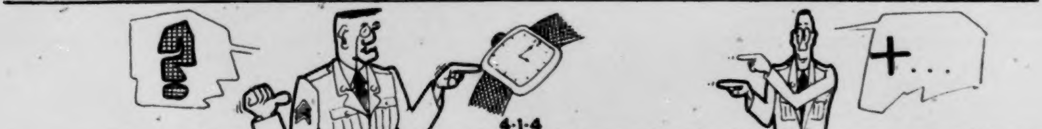
4·1·4



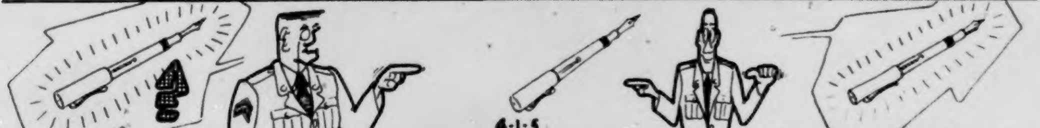
4·1·4



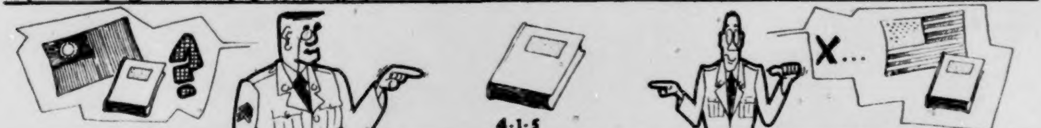
4·1·4



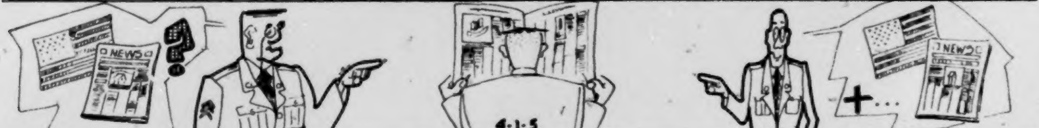
4·1·4



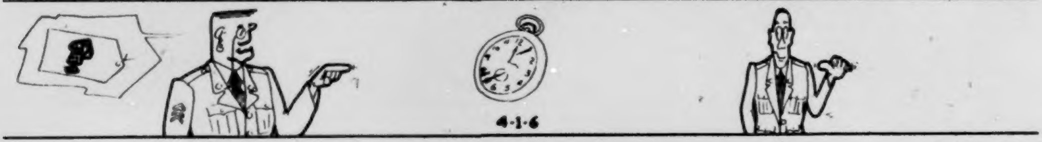
4·1·5



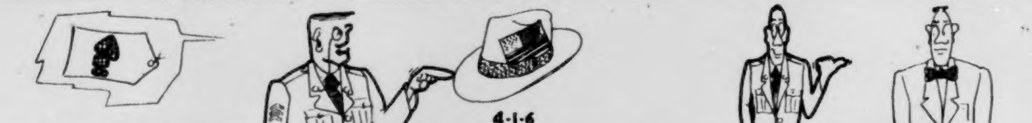
4·1·5



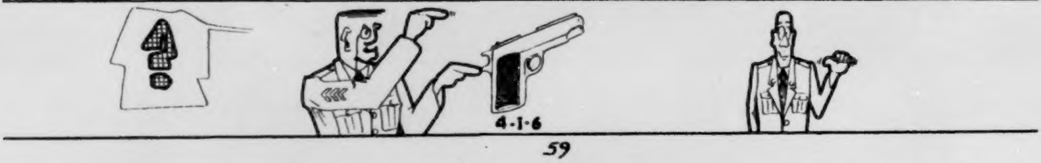
4·1·5



4·1·6

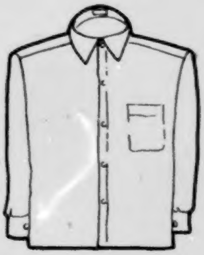


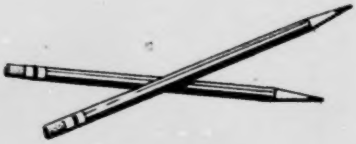
4·1·6

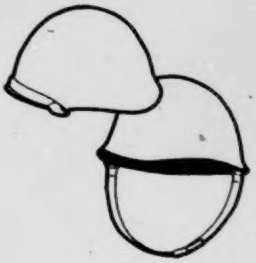


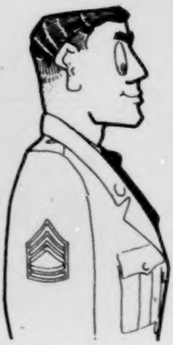
4·1·6

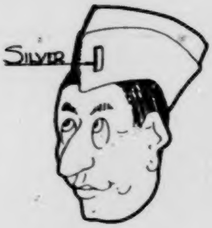
LESSON 4

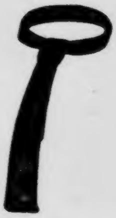


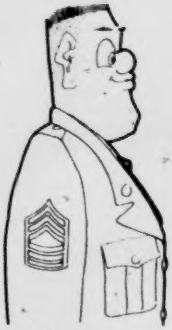


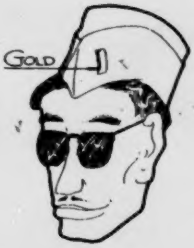


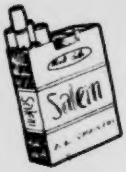


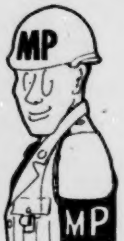


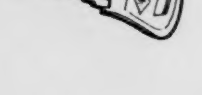












II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéide chènshān?	Whose shirt is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ tāde chènshān.	That is his shirt.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shéide gāngkwēi?	Whose helmet is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ wǒde gāngkwēi.	That is my helmet.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ nǐde lǐngdài ma?	Is that your necktie?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ wǒde lǐngdài.	That isn't my necktie.
2.	Syān:	Jèige chyānbǐ shr̀ nǐde ma?	Is this pencil yours?
	Sywé:	Nèige chyānbǐ shr̀ wǒde.	That pencil is mine.
	Syān:	Jèige yān shr̀ nǐde búshr̀?	Is this cigarette yours or not?
	Sywé:	Nèige yān búshr̀ wǒde.	That cigarette isn't mine.
	Syān:	Jèige yān shr̀ shéide?	Whose cigarette is this?
	Sywé:	Nèige yān shr̀ tāde.	That cigarette is his.
3.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Jàu Jūngwèide chyānbǐ ma?	Is this 1st Lieutenant Jàu's pencil?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ Jàu Jūngwèide chyānbǐ.	That isn't 1st Lieutenant Jàu's pencil.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shéide chyānbǐ?	Whose pencil is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Jāng Shàuwèide chyānbǐ.	That is 2nd Lieutenant Jāng's pencil
4.	Syān:	Jèiběn shū shr̀ Lǐ Jūngshr̀de búshr̀?	Is this Sergeant Lǐ's book or not?
	Sywé:	Nèiběn shū búshr̀ Lǐ Jūngshr̀de.	That is not Sergeant Lǐ's book.
	Syān:	Nèiběn shū shr̀ búshr̀ Wáng Shr̀gwānjǎngde?	Is that M/Sergeant Wáng's book or not?
	Sywé:	Nèiběn shū shr̀ Wáng Shr̀gwānjǎngde.	That is M/Sergeant Wáng's book.

5.	Syān:	Nĭ nèibĕn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū ma?	Is that book of yours a Chinese book?
	Sywé:	Wŏ jèibĕn shū búshr̀ Jūnggwo shū.	This book of mine isn't a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nĭ nèibĕn shū shr̀ shémma shū?	What kind of book is that book of yours?
	Sywé:	Wŏ jèibĕn shū shr̀ Mĕigwo shū.	This book of mine is an American book.
	Syān:	Tā nèige chyānbĭ shr̀ Mĕigwo chyānbĭ búshr̀?	Is that pencil of his an American pencil or not?
	Sywé:	Tā nèige chyānbĭ búshr̀ Mĕigwo chyānbĭ.	That pencil of his isn't an American pencil.
	Syān:	Syànbīng nèige chyāng shr̀ shémma chyāng?	What kind of gun is the military policeman's gun?
	Sywé:	Syànbīng nèige chyāng shr̀ Mĕigwo chyāng.	The military policeman's gun is an American gun.
6.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ nĭde yàushr ma?	Is this your key?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ wŏde yàushr.	That isn't my key.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéide yàushr?	Whose key is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ nĭde yàushr.	That is your key.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo yàushr búshr̀?	Is this a Chinese key or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo yàushr; nèi shr̀ Mĕigwo yàushr.	That isn't a Chinese key; that is an American key.

7. Vocabulary

47.	-běn	M:	(for book)
48.	chènshān	N:	shirt
49.	chyānbǐ	N:	pencil
50.	-de	P:	(N and V suffix indicating modification)
51.	gāngkwēi	N:	helmet
52.	-gè	M:	(for person or thing)
53.	Jāng	N:	(surname)
54.	Jàu	N:	(surname)
55.	jūngshr̀	N:	sergeant (military)
56.	jūngwèi	N:	first leiutenant (military)
57.	lǐngdài	N:	necktie
58.	shàngshr̀	N:	sergeant first class (military)
59.	shàuwèi	N:	second lieutenant (military)
60.	shr̀gwānjǎng	N:	master sergeant (military)
61.	syànbīng	N:	military police, military policeman
62.	yān	N:	cigarette, tobacco
63.	yàushr	N:	key

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Modifying suffix -de

The suffix -de plays an essential part in modification. Practically all modifying elements can take -de, with exceptions which will be seen below. In general, all modifying elements of more than one syllable usually take -de. A noun or a pronoun with the suffix -de forms the possessive noun or pronoun. A stative verb, as a modifier, takes suffix -de when the stative verb is preceded by some qualifying element.

wǒde byǎu	my watch
tāde chyán	his money
jyūngwānde shǒuchyāng	officers' pistols
bīngde bùchyāng	soldiers' rifles
Wáng Syānshengde fángdz	Mr. Wáng's house
Wáng Syáujyede màudz	Miss Wáng's hat
shéide chènshān	whose shirt
syànbīngde gāngkwēi	the military police's helmet
bùhǎude rén	bad men
bùhǎude shū	bad books

There are several occasions when the suffix -de is omitted.

1) When there is a personal relation between the modifying noun or pronoun and the modified noun, -de is often omitted:

wŏ tàitai	my wife
tā syānsheng	her husband
nĭ syáujye	your daughter

2) When the modifying noun shows nationality, -de is usually omitted:

Jūnggwo rén	Chinese
Mĕigwo sywésheng	American students
Fàgwo bīng	French soldiers

3) When the stative verb as a modifier is simple and unqualified, -de is omitted.

hău rén	good man
hău màudz	good hats
hău sywésheng	good students

Translate following:

1) my newspaper
2) good watch
3) students' books
4) American house
5) Captain Wáng's pistol
6) his wife
7) your daughters
8) Chinese pictures
9) French officers
10) my shirts, neckties

2. Measure (M)

A measure is a word which may be preceded by a number, or a specifier, or both, and is followed by a noun. English expressions with a similar function are: a 'flock' of sheep, this 'pair' of shoes, three 'pieces' of pie. The general measure, applicable to most nouns, is -ge. There are a number of nouns which require more specific and appropriate measures. For instance, shū (book) takes the measure běn (volume). Even when a specific measure is available, -ge is usually permissible.

SP-M	N	
jèige	byǎu	this watch
nèiběn	shū	that book
jèige	Měigwo sywésheng	this American student
nèige	Jūnggwo tàitai	that Chinese lady

A noun modified by a number-measure or a specifier-measure may be omitted if the meaning is understood.

Jèiběn shū shr̀ nǐde ma?	Is this book yours?
Jèiběn shr̀ wǒde.	This book is mine.
Nèige fángdz shr̀ nǐde ma?	Is that house yours?
Nèige búshr̀ wǒde.	That isn't mine.

3. Nouns modified by pronouns and specifiers

A noun may be modified by a possessive pronoun, or a specifier, or both. When it is modified by both, both modifiers stand before the noun, and the pronoun precedes the specifier.

wǒde byǎu	my watch
jèige byǎu	this watch
wǒ jèige byǎu	this watch of mine
tāde màudz	his hat
nèige màudz	that hat
tā nèige màudz	that hat of his

Translate the following:

1) Is that student of yours an American?
2) That hat of yours is good.
3) That painting of yours is not good.
4) This student of mine does not have books.
5) Is that pistol of his an American pistol?
6) This isn't mine, is it yours?
7) Whose rifle is this; is it 2nd Lt. Jau's?
8) Whose key is that; is it your wife's?
9) That good necktie is mine.
10) Her husband doesn't have a cigarette.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ chyānbĭ búshr̀?	Is this a pencil or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ chyānbĭ.	That is a pencil.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ tāde chyānbĭ búshr̀?	Is this his pencil or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ tāde chyānbĭ.	That isn't his pencil.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéide chyānbĭ?	Whose pencil is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ wŏde chyānbĭ.	That is my pencil.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ yān búshr̀?	Is this a cigarette or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ yān.	That is a cigarette.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ nĭde yān búshr̀?	Is this your cigarette or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ wŏde yān.	That isn't my cigarette.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ shéide yān?	Whose cigarette is this?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ nĭde yān.	That is your cigarette.
2.	Syān:	Nèibĕn shū shr̀ búshr̀ tāde?	Is that book his or not?
	Sywé:	Nèibĕn shū shr̀ tāde.	That book is his.
	Syān:	Tā nèibĕn shū shr̀ Mĕigwo shū ma?	Is that book of his an American book?
	Sywé:	Tā nèibĕn shū shr̀ Mĕigwo shū.	That book of his is an American book.
	Syān:	Jèige yàushr shr̀ búshr̀ nĭde?	Is this key yours or not?
	Sywé:	Jèige yàushr shr̀ wŏde.	This key is mine.
	Syān:	Nĭ jèige yàushr shr̀ Mĕigwo yàushr ma?	Is this key of yours an American key?
	Sywé:	Wŏ jèige yàushr shr̀ Mĕigwo yàushr.	This key of mine is an American key.

3.	Syān:	Jèige jyāngwān shr̀ shéi?	Who is this officer?
	Sywé:	Nèige jyūngwān shr̀ Jāng Jūngwèi.	That officer is 1st. Lt. Jāng.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Jāng Jūngwèide lǐngdài ma?	Is this 1st Lt. Jāng's necktie?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Jāng Jūngwèide lǐngdài.	That is 1st Lt. Jāng's necktie.
	Syān:	Jèige syànbīng shr̀ shéi?	Who is this military policeman?
	Sywé:	Nèige syànbīng shr̀ Jàu Jūngshr̀.	That military policeman is Sgt. Jàu.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Jàu Jūngshr̀de gāngkwēi ma?	Is this Sgt. Jàu's helmet?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Jàu Jūngshr̀de gāngkwēi.	That is Sgt. Jàu's helmet.
4.	Syān:	Jèiběn shū shr̀ shéide?	Whose book is this?
	Sywé:	Jèiběn shū shr̀ Jàu Shàuwèide.	That is 2nd Lt. Jàu's book.
	Syān:	Jàu Shàuwèi jèiběn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū ma?	Is this book of 2nd Lt.Jàu's a Chinese book?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàuwèi jèiběn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū.	This book of 2nd Lt. Jàu's is a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nèige chènshān shr̀ shéide?	Whose shirt is that?
	Sywé:	Nèige chènshān shr̀ Jāng Shàngshr̀de.	That is SFC Jāng's shirt.
	Syān:	Jāng Shàngshr̀ nèige chènshān shr̀ Měigwo chènshān ma?	Is that shirt of SFC Jāng's an American shirt?
	Sywé:	Jāng Shàngshr̀ nèige chènshān shr̀ Měigwo chènshān.	That shirt of SFC Jāng's is an American shirt.

5.	Syān:	Jèige Jūnggwo jyūngwān shr̀ shéi?	Who is this Chinese officer?
	Sywé:	Nèige Jūnggwo jyūngwān shr̀ Jàu Jūngwèi.	That Chinese officer is 1st Lt. Jàu.
	Syān:	Jàu Jūngwèide chyānbǐ shr̀ Jūnggwo chyānbǐ ma?	Is 1st Lt. Jàu's pencil a Chinese pencil?
	Sywé:	Jàu Jūngwèide chyānbǐ búshr̀ Jūnggwo chyānbǐ.	1st Lt. Jàu's pencil isn't a Chinese pencil.
	Syān:	Jèige Měigwo rén shr̀ shéi?	Who is this American?
	Sywé:	Nèige Měigwo rén shr̀ Jāng Shr̀gwānjǎng.	That American is M/Sgt. Jāng.
	Syān:	Jāng Shr̀gwānjǎngde yàushr shr̀ Fàgwo yàushr ma?	Is M/Sgt. Jāng's key a French key?
	Sywé:	Jāng Shr̀gwānjǎngde yàushr búshr̀ Fàgwo yàushr.	M/Sgt. Jāng's key isn't a French key.
6.	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu méiyou shū?	Do you have a book or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu shū.	I have a book.
	Syān:	Nǐ nèiběn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū búshr̀?	Is that book of yours a Chinese book or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèiběn shū shr̀ Jūnggwo shū.	That book of mine is a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu méiyou yān?	Do you have a cigarette or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu yān.	I have a cigarette.
	Syān:	Nǐ nèige yān shr̀ Fàgwo yān búshr̀?	Is that cigarette of yours a French cigarette or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèige yān búshr̀ Fàgwo yān.	That cigarette of mine isn't a French cigarette.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

shēn	shén	shěn	shèn	shēn, sēn	sēn, shēn
wēn	wén	wěn	wèn	mén, wén	wén, mén
gē	gé	gě	gè	nǐ, lǐ	lǐ, nǐ
tī	tí	tǐ	tì	wèi, wài	wài, wèi
shē	shé	shě	shè		
lī	lí	lǐ	lì		

2.

Jāng Jūngwèi	Jāng Syānsheng
Wáng Jūngwèi	Wáng Syānsheng
Lǐ Jūngwèi	Lǐ Syānsheng
Jàu Jūngwèi	Jàu Syānsheng
Jāng Shàngshr̀	Jāng Syáujye
Wáng Shàngshr̀	Wáng Syáujye
Lǐ Shàngshr̀	Lǐ Syáujye
Jàu Shàngshr̀	Jàu Syáujye
Jāng Shàuwèi	Jāng Tàitai
Wáng Shàuwèi	Wéng Tàitai
Lǐ Shàuwèi	Lǐ Tàitai
Jàu Shàuwèi	Jàu Tàitai

3.

Jèige shr̀ shéide?	Nèige shr̀ tāde.
Jèige chyānbǐ shr̀ shéide?	Nèige chyānbǐ shr̀ tāde.
Nèige chènshān shr̀ shéide?	Nèige chènshān shr̀ tāde.
Nèige chènshān shr̀ shéide?	Nèige chènshān shr̀ tā syānshengde.
Jàu Jūngshr̀ yǒu lǐngdài ma?	Jàu Jūngshr̀ yǒu lǐngdài.

Tā shr̀ syànbīng ma?	Tā búshr̀ syànbīng, tā shr̀ jyūngwān.
Lǐ Shàuwèi yǒu gāngkwēi ma?	Lǐ Shàuwèi méiyǒu gāngkwēi, yǒu chyán.
Wáng Shàngshr̀ yǒu chyán ma?	Wáng Shàngshr̀ méiyǒu chyán, yǒu gāngkwēi.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) This is a Chinese table, and that is a Chinese chair.
2) Is this house yours?
3) What kind of gun is this?
4) Do you have American paper?
5) Captain Wáng does not have a rifle. He has a pistol.
6) Is your wife a French-woman?
7) This hat is mine; that helmet isn't mine.
8) Do you have American shirts and neckties?
9) Is that soldier a military policeman?
10) Is he a sergeant? Is he a second lieutenant?

2. Conversation

1) Jèigè bīng shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?
2) Nèigè jyūngwān shr̀ shéi?
3) Tā búshr̀ Wáng Shàuwèi ma?
4) Tā nèigè chènshān hǎu ma?
5) Nǐ yǒu Měigwo chyānbǐ ma?
6) Wáng Syáujye yǒu lǐngdài ma?
7) Nǐ nèigè yān shr̀ Jūnggwo yān ma?
8) Nǐ shr̀ syànbīng ma?
9) Tā shr̀ Jūngwèi búshr̀?
10) Nèigè Shàngshr̀ yǒu tàitai ma?
11) Jèigè gāngkwēi shr̀ shéide?
12) Nèigè syànbīng yǒu gāngkwēi ma?
13) Wáng Shàuwèi yǒu méiyǒu lǐngdài?

14) Jèiběn shū shr̀ shéide?

15) Jāng Syáujyede jwōdz shr̀ Jūnggwo jwōdz ma?

16. Wáng Shàngwèide yǐdz shr̀ Měigwo yǐdz búshr̀?

17) Lǐ Jūngshr̀de chyānbǐ shr̀ búshr̀ Jūnggwo chyānbǐ?

18) Jàu Jūngwèi shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?

19) Lǐ Shàuwèi yǒu Fàgwo chènshān méiyou?

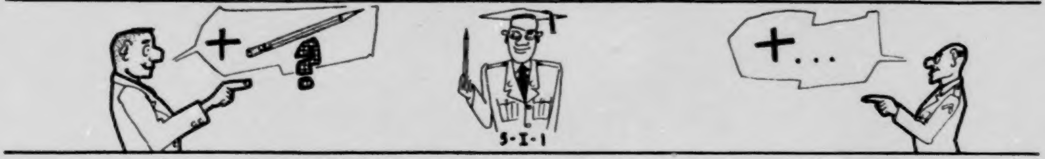
20) Jèi shr̀ nǐde chyānbǐ ma?

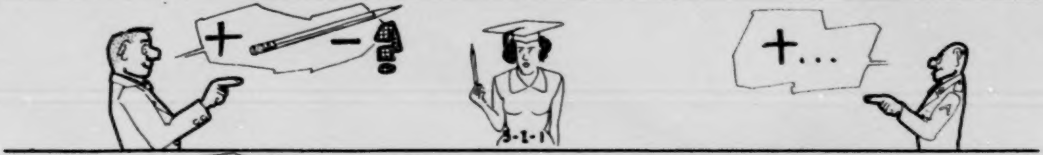
LESSON 5

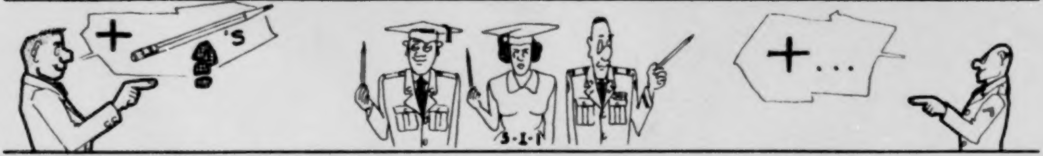
I. Structural Dialogues

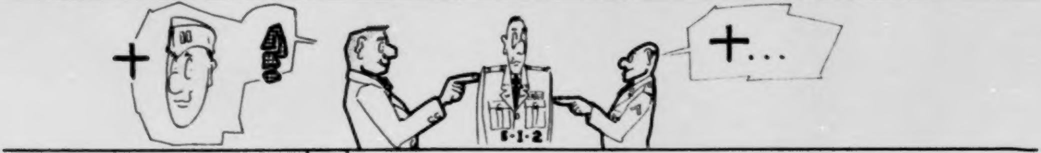
1.	Syān:	Nèigè nánsywésheng yǒu chyānbǐ ma?	Does that man-student have a pencil?
	Sywé:	Nèigè nánsywésheng yǒu chyānbǐ.	That man-student has a pencil.
	Syān:	Nèigè nyǔsywésheng yǒu chyānbǐ méiyǒu?	Does that girl-student have a pencil or not?
	Sywé:	Nèigè nyǔsywésheng yǒu chyānbǐ.	That girl-student has a pencil.
	Syān:	Tāmen dōu yǒu chyānbǐ ma?	Do they all have pencils?
	Sywé:	Tāmen dōu yǒu chyānbǐ.	They all have pencils.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ jèige péngyou shr̀ jyūngwān ma?	Is this friend of yours an officer?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jèige péngyou shr̀ jyūngwān.	This friend of mine is an officer.
	Syān:	Nǐ nèige péngyou shr̀ jyūngwān búshr̀?	Is that friend of yours an officer or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèige péngyou shr̀ jyūngwān.	That friend of mine is an officer.
	Syān:	Nǐ jèi lyǎngge péngyou dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?	Are both the two friends of yours officers?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jèi lyǎngge péngyou dōu shr̀ jyūngwān.	Both the two friends of mine are officers.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu háidz ma?	Do you have children?
	Sywé:	Wǒ méiyou háidz.	I don't have any children.
	Syān:	Tā yǒu háidz méiyǒu?	Does he have children or not?
	Sywé:	Tā méiyou háidz.	He doesn't have any children.
	Syān:	Nǐmen dōu méiyou háidz ma?	Do none of you have children?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen dōu méiyou háidz.	None of us have children.

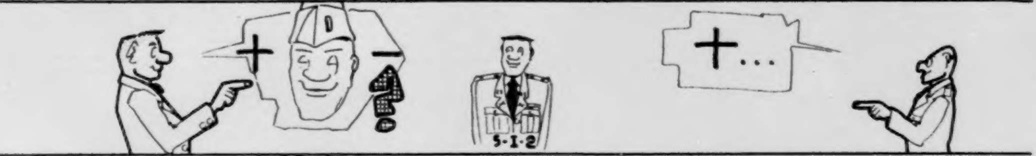
LESSON 5

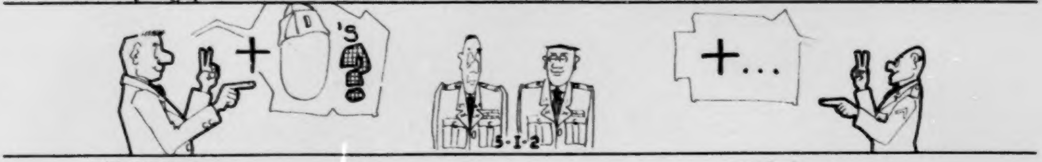


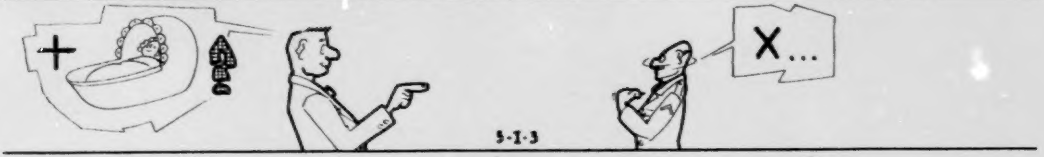


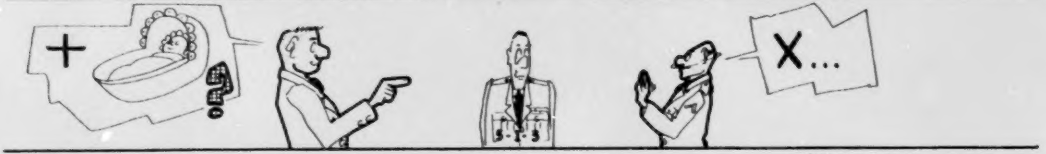


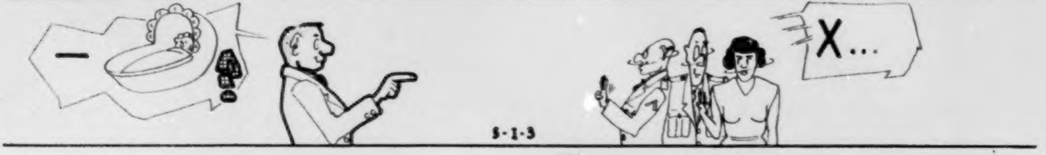






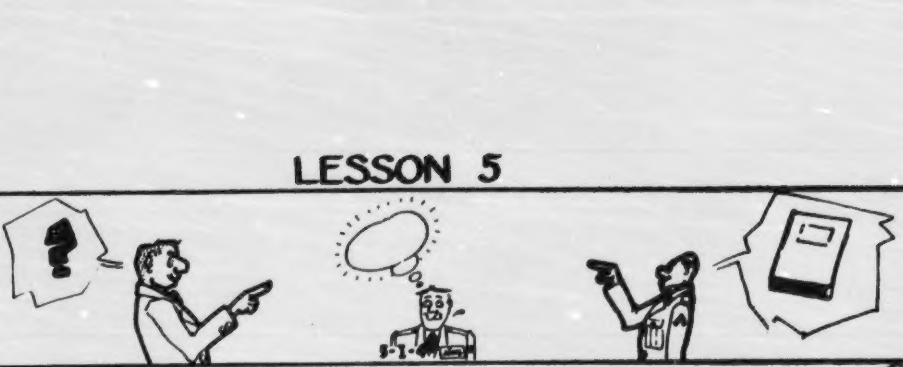


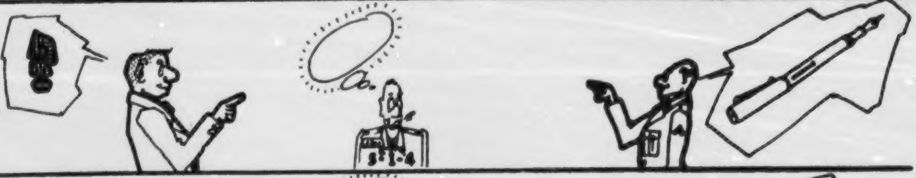


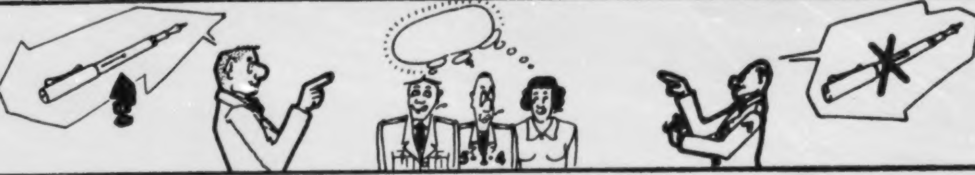


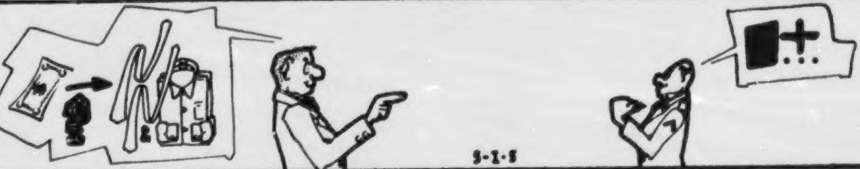
4.	Syān:	Jāng Syàshr̀ yàu shémma?	What does Corporal Jāng want?
	Sywé:	Tā yàu yìběn shū.	He wants a book.
	Syān:	Jàu Shàuwèi yàu shémma?	What does Second Lieutenant Jàu want?
	Sywé:	Tā yàu yígė bǐ.	He wants a pen.
	Syān:	Tāmen dōu yàu bǐ ma?	Do all of them want pens?
	Sywé:	Tāmen bùdōu yàu bǐ.	Not all of them want pens.
5.	Syān:	Lǐngdài, chènshān nǐ dōu mǎi ma?	Do you buy both neckties and shirts?
	Sywé:	Lǐngdài, chènshān wǒ dōu mǎi.	I buy both neckties and shirts.
	Syān:	Měigwo lǐngdài, Měigwo chènshān tā dōu mài ma?	Does he sell both American neckties and American shirts?
	Sywé:	Měigwo lǐngdài, Měigwo chènshān tā dōu búmài.	He sells neither American neckties nor American shirts.
6.	Syān:	Nǐ chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Do you eat Chinese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùchr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	I don't eat Chinese food.
	Syān:	Nǐ chr̄ Měigwo fàn ma?	Do you eat American food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ chr̄ Měigwo fàn.	I eat American food.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo fàn, Měigwo fàn nǐ dōu chr̄ ma?	Do you eat both Chinese and American food?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo fàn, Měigwo fàn wǒ bùdōu chr̄.	I don't eat both Chinese food and American food.

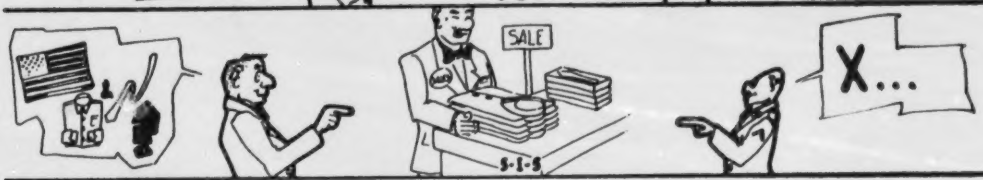
LESSON 5

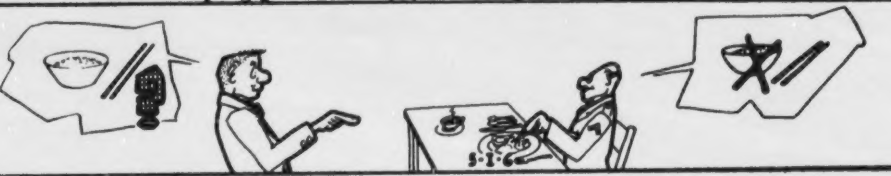


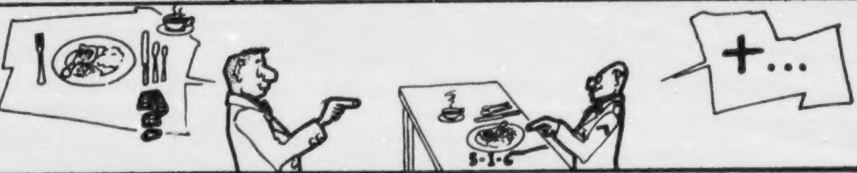


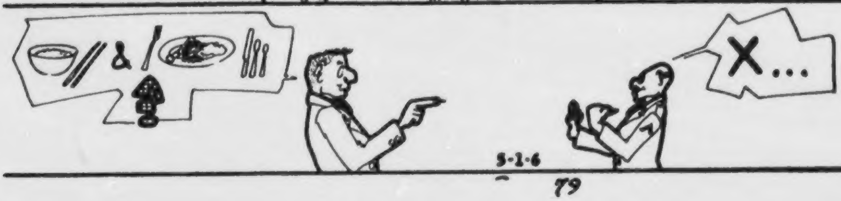












II. Basic Dialogue

1. Syān: Jàu Shàngwèi, nǐ yǒu háidz ma?	Do you have children, Captain Jàu?
Sywé: Wǒ yǒu háidz.	I have children.
Syān: Nǐde háidz dōu shr̀ nánháidz ma?	Are all of your children boys?
Sywé: Wǒ yǒu yíge nánháidz, yíge nyǔháidz.	I have a boy and a girl.
Syān: Nǐ nèi lyǎngge háidz dōu yàu hwàr ma?	Do both of your children want pictures?
Sywé: Wǒ nèi lyǎngge háidz dōu yàu hwàr.	Both of my children want pictures.
2. Syān: Nèi lyǎngge bīng dōu shr̀ Měiggwo rén ma?	Are both of those soldiers Americans?
Sywé: Nèi lyǎngge bīng bùdōu shr̀ Měigwo rén.	Not both of those soldiers are Americans.
Syān: Tāmen dōu shr̀ Jūnggwo rén ma?	Are both of them Chinese?
Sywé: Yíge shr̀ Měigwo rén, yíge shr̀ Fàgwo rén.	One is American and one is French.
Syān: Tāmen dōu chr̄ Měigwo fàn ma?	Do they both eat American food?
Sywé: Tāmen dōu chr̄ Měigwo fàn.	Both of them eat American food.
Syān: Tāmen dōu yǒu chyāng ma?	Do both of them have guns?
Sywé: Tāmen dōu méiyou chyāng.	None of them have guns.
3. Syān: Nǐ yàu mǎi yān ma?	Do you want to buy cigarettes?
Sywé: Wǒ yàu mǎi yān.	I want to buy cigarettes.
Syān: Tā yàu mǎi yān ma?	Does he want to buy cigarettes?
Sywé: Tā yàu mǎi yān.	He wants to buy cigarettes.

	Syān:	Nǐmen dōu yàu mǎi Měigwo yān ma?	Do all of you want to buy American cigarettes?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu mǎi Měigwo yān, tā yàu mǎi Fàgwo yān.	I want to buy American cigarettes, and he wants to buy French cigarettes.
	Syān:	Nǐmen bùdōu yàu mǎi Měigwo yān ma?	Don't all of you want to buy American cigarettes?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùdōu yàu mǎi Měigwo yān.	Not all of us want to buy American cigarettes.
4.	Syān:	Chènshān tā yàu mǎi ma?	Does he want to buy shirts?
	Sywé:	Chènshān tā yàu mǎi.	He wants to buy shirts.
	Syān:	Lǐngdài tā yàu búyàu mǎi?	Does he want to buy neckties or not?
	Sywé:	Lǐngdài tā yàu mǎi.	He wants to buy neckties.
	Syān:	Chènshān, lǐngdài tā dōu yàu mǎi ma?	Does he want to buy both shirts and neckties?
	Sywé:	Chènshān, lǐngdài tā dōu yàu mǎi.	He wants to buy both shirts and neckties.
5.	Syān:	Nánháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng yǒu méiyǒu?	Does Mr. Lǐ have any boys or not?
	Sywé:	Nánháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng méiyǒu.	Mr. Lǐ doesn't have any boys.
	Syán:	Nyǔháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng yǒu méiyǒu?	Does Mr. Lǐ have any girls or not?
	Sywé:	Nyǔháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng méiyǒu.	Mr. Lǐ doesn't have any girls.
	Syān:	Nánháidz, nyǔháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng dōu méiyǒu ma?	Does Mr.Lǐ have neither boys nor girls?
	Sywé:	Nánháidz, nyǔháidz, Lǐ Syānsheng dōu méiyǒu.	Mr. Lǐ has neither boys nor girls.

6. Vocabulary

64.	chr̄	V:	eat
65.	dōu	A:	all, both
66.	fàn	N;	food
67.	(syǎu)háidz	N:	child
68.	lyǎng	NU:	two
69.	mǎi	V:	buy
70.	mài	V:	sell
71.	-men	BF:	(noun suffix indicating plural form of nouns referring to human beings)
72.	nán-	N:	male (of person)
73.	nyǔ-	N:	female(of person)
74.	péngyou	N:	friend
75.	syàshr̀	N:	corporal (military)
76.	yàu	AV: V:	want to want
77.	yī	NU:	one

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Inverted Functive Sentence and Transposed Object

The object of a functive sentence may be transposed to the beginning of the sentence, in front of the subject, where it becomes the topic of the sentence. A plural object or a series of objects thus transposed are usually summarized by the adverb dōu just before the verb. For example:

O S V

Lǐngdài, wǒ yǒu.	Necktie, I have.
Gāngkwēi, tā méiyǒu.	Helmet, he doesn't have.
Lǐngdài, gāngkwēi, nǐ dōu méiyǒu.	Both necktie and helmet, you don't have.

Exercise: Change the following sentences from functive sentences to inverted functive sentences:

1) Tā yǒu jūng, tā méiyǒu byǎu.
2) Nǐ yàu jwōdz, nǐ búyàu yǐdz.
3) Wǒ búyàu fángdz, màudz.
4) Wǒ chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn, wǒ bùchr̄ Měigwo fàn.
5) Tā yǒu nánpéngyou, tā méiyǒu nyǔpéngyou.

2. Adverbs (A)

As in English, the function of adverbs in Chinese is to modify verbs or other adverbs. In every case adverbs precede verbs.

Jūnggwo fàn, Měigwo fàn, wǒ dōu chr̄.	I eat both Chinese food and American food.
Bùchyāng, shǒuchyāng, tā dōu yǒu.	He has both rifle and pistol.

3. The Adverb dōu

The adverb dōu always refers back to someone or something already mentioned. In the case of sentences involving both transposed object and the subject of the sentence, if the subject is singular, dōu refers back to the transposed object:

O S V

Shū, bàu, wǒ dōu yàu. I want both books and papers.

When the subject is plural, the context will show whether transposed object or subject or both is referred to:

O S V

Shū, bàu, wǒmen dōu yàu. We want both books and papers.
or, We both want books and papers.
or, We both want both books and papers.

Exercise: Translate the following sentences into Chinese (Inverted functive sentence):

1. I want both neckties and shirts.
2. That friend of his wants both table and chair.
3. This girl friend of Mr. Jāng's wants both hat and shirt.

4. Numbers (NU)

Numbers (NU) are essentially counters. In simple counting or reading a list of numbers they are not bound forms. Otherwise they are bound forms and require a measure.

For example: lyǎngběn shū, etc.

5. Tones on yī

The numeral yī (one) when used as a cardinal in counting, has the high, level tone. When followed by a measure, however, it behaves exactly like the negative particle bù (see Lesson 1, Note 7). Hence yíge (-ge being intrinsically a falling tone), but yìběn, is pronounced in the falling tone.

yígè rén	one man
yìběn shū	one book

6. Lyǎng

Lyǎng is a number but is not used as a cardinal in counting. It is a bound form.

lyǎngge rén	two persons

Exercise: Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1. Do you have two books? Yes. I have two.
2. Do both of your friends want to sell their shirts?
3. Both of these two men want to buy houses.
4. Those two friends of 2nd Lt. Jāng's want books.

7. Pronoun, Specifier, Number and Measure Before Nouns

If the modifiers of a noun includes a pronoun, specifier, a number and a measure, the possession indicator "de" usually attached to the pronoun will be omitted and the order of the modifiers is always arranged in the order of:

PRONOUN	SPECIFIER	NUMBER - MEASURE	NOUN
Tā	nèi	lyǎnggé	bǐ
Those two pens of his			
Nǐ	jèi	yígè	yǐdz
This one chair of yours			

Exercise: Translate the following phrases into Chinese:

1. These two books of his
2. Those two friends of mine
3. These two neckties of yours
4. Those two helmets of 2nd Lt. Jāng's

8. The Verb yàu

The verb yàu may serve as the main verb in a sentence or it may stand immediately before the main verb to supplement and assist as an auxiliary verb, (AV).

(verb)	Nǐ yàu bǐ ma?	Do you want a pen?
(auxiliary verb)	Nǐ yàu mǎi bǐ ma?	Do you want to buy a pen.

If there is an auxiliary verb (as "yàu") in a choice type question, the word order will be arranged as follows:

Nǐ yàu mǎi bǐ búyàu? Do you want to buy a pen or not?
or, Nǐ yàu búyàu mǎi bǐ?

91

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān: Tāmen dōu yǒu nánpéngyou ma?	Do all of them have boy friends?
	Sywé: Tāmen dōu yǒu nánpéngyou.	All of them have boy friends.
	Syān: Tāmen dōu yǒu nyǔpéngyou ma?	Do all of them have girl friends?
	Sywé: Tāmen dōu méiyǒu nyǔpéngyou.	None of them have girl friends.
2.	Syān: Nǐmen dōu shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Are all of you Americans?
	Sywé: Wǒmen dōu shr̀ Měigwo rén.	All of us are Americans.
	Syān: Nǐmen dōu shr̀ nyǔsywésheng ma?	Are all of you girl students?
	Sywé: Wǒmen dōu búshr̀ nyǔsywésheng.	None of us are girl students.
3.	Syān: Nánháidz dōu yàu shǒuchyāng ma?	Do all of the boys want pistols?
	Sywé: Nánháidz dōu yàu shǒuchyāng.	All of the boys want pistcls.
	Syān: Nyǔháidz dōu yàu shǒuchyāng ma?	Do all of the girls want pistols?
	Sywé: Nyǔháidz dōu búyàu shǒuchyāng.	None of the girls want pistols.
4.	Syān: Wǒmen dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Do all of us eat Chinese food?
	Sywé: Nǐmen dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	All of you eat Chinese food.
	Syān: Nèi lyǎnggè syàshr̀ dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Do both of those two corporals eat Chinese food?
	Sywé: Nèi lyǎnggè syàshr̀ dōu bùchr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	Neither of those two corporals eats Chinese food.

5.	Syān: Jūngwèi, shàuwèi, dōu mǎi màudz ma?	Do both the 1st Lt. and the 2nd Lt. buy hats?
	Sywé: Jūngwèi, shàuwèi, dōu mǎi màudz.	Both the 1st Lt. and the 2nd Lt. buy hats.
	Syān: Jūngshr̀, syàshr̀, dōu mǎi màudz ma?	Do both the Sgt. and the Corporal buy hats?
	Sywé: Jūngshr̀, syàshr̀, dōu bùmǎi màudz.	Neither the Sgt. nor the Corporal buys hats.
6.	Syān: Nǐmende Jūnggwo péngyou dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Do all of your Chinese friends eat Chinese food?
	Sywé: Wǒmende Jūnggwo péngyou dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	All of our Chinese friends eat Chinese food.
	Syān: Nǐmende Fàgwo péngyou bùdōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Don't all of your French friends eat Chinese food?
	Sywé: Wǒmende Fàgwo péngyou bùdōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	Not all of our French friends eat Chinese food.
7.	Syān: Jèi lyǎngběn shū dōu shr̀ Fàgwo shū ma?	Are both of these (two) books French books?
	Sywé: Nèi lyǎngběn shū dōu búshr̀ Fàgwo shū.	Neither of those (two) books is a French book.
	Syān: Jèi lyǎngběn shū dōu shr̀ Měigwo shū ma?	Are both of these (two) books American books?
	Sywé: Nèi lyǎngběn shū bùdōu shr̀ Měigwo shū, yìběn shr̀ Meigwo shū, yìběn shr̀ Jūnggwo shū.	Those two books aren't both American books. One is an American book and one is a Chinese book.
8.	Syān: Nèi lyǎngge nánrén dōu mài yàushr ma?	Do both of those men sell keys?
	Sywé: Nèi lyǎngge nánrén dōu búmài yàushr.	Neither of those men sells keys.
	Syān: Nèi lyǎngge nyǔrén dōu mài lǐngdài ma?	Do both of those women sell neckties?

	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎnggè nyǔrén bùdōu mài lǐngdài. Yíge mài lǐngdài, yíge mài chènshān.	Not both of those women are selling neckties; one sells neckties and the other sells shirts.
9.	Syān:	Jèi lyǎnggè háidz dōu yǒu chyán ma?	Do both of these children have money?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎnggè háidz dōu méiyǒu chyán.	Neither of those children have money.
	Syān:	Jèi lyǎnggè rén dōu yǒu chyán ma?	Do both of these persons have money?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎnggè rén bùdōu yǒu chyán. Shr̀gwānjǎng yǒu chyán, syàshr̀ méiyǒu chyán.	Not both of those persons have money. The M/Sgt has money, but the Corporal doesn't have money.
10.	Syān:	Nǐmen yàu búyàu jř?	Do you want paper or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen yàu jř.	We want paper.
	Syān:	Měigwo jř, Fàgwo jř, nǐmen dōu yàu ma?	Do you want both American paper and French paper?
	Sywé:	Měigwo jř wǒmen yàu, Fàgwo jř wǒmen búyàu.	We want American paper, but we don't want French paper.
11.	Syān:	Nèi lyǎnggè háidz mài búmài bàu?	Do those two children sell newspapers or not?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎnggè háidz mài bàu.	Those two children sell newspapers.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo bàu, Měigwo bàu, tāmen dōu mài ma?	Do they sell both Chinese newspapers and American newspapers?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo bàu, Měigwo bàu, tāmen dōu mài.	They sell both Chinese and American newspapers.
12.	Syān:	Jūnggwo fàn, nǐ jèi lyǎnggè péngyou dōu chr̄ ma?	Do both of your two friends eat Chinese food?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo fàn, wǒ jèi lyǎnggè péngyou dōu chr̄.	Both of my two friends eat Chinese food.

Syān: Fàgwo fàn, nĭ jèi lyănggè péngyou dōu bùchr̄ ma?	Don't both of these two friends of yours eat French food?
Sywé: Fàgwo fàn, wŏ jèi lyănggè péngyou dōu bùchr̄.	Neither of these two friends of mine eats French food.
Syān: Gāngkwēi, bùchyāng, syànbīng dōu măi ma?	Does the Military Policeman buy both helmets and rifles?
Sywé: Gāngkwēi, bùchyāng, syànbīng bùdōu mai.	The Military Policeman doesn't buy both helmets and rifles.
Syān: Shémma syànbīng măi, shémma syànbīng bùmăi?	What does the Military Policeman buy, and what doesn't he buy?
Sywé: Gāngkwēi syànbīng măi, bùchyāng syànbīng bùmăi.	The Military Policeman buys helmets, but not rifles.
14. Syān: Fàgwo jūng nĭmen dōu méiyŏu ma?	Don't all of you have French clocks?
Sywé: Fàgwo jūng, wŏmen dōu méiyŏu.	None of us have French clocks.
Syān: Mĕigwo jūng, nĭmen yŏu méiyŏu?	Do you have American clocks or not?
Sywé: Mĕigwo jūng, wŏmen bùdōu yŏu. Tā yŏu, wŏ méiyŏu.	Not all of us have American clocks. He has, but I don't.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

sōu	sóu	sǒu	sòu	tōu, tāu	tāu, tōu
dāng	dáng	dǎng	dàng	lóu, láu	láu, lóu
dōu	dóu	dǒu	dòu	sǒu, sǎu	sǎu, sǒu
wō	wó	wǒ	wò	dòu, dàu	dàu, dòu
dēng	déng	děng	dèng		
dāi	dái	dǎi	dài		

2.

shéide chyāng	wǒde chyāng
shéide rén	wǒde rén
shéide jř	wǒde jř
shéide fàn	wǒde fàn
shéide péngyou	tāde péngyou
shéide háidz	tāde háidz
shéide chènshān	tāde chènshān
shéide lǐngdài	tāde lǐngdài
shéi chr̄ fàn	tā chr̄ fàn
shéi méi fàn	Wáng méi fàn
shéi yǒu fàn	nǐ yǒu fàn
shéi yàu fàn	Jàu yàu fàn

3.

Nǐ yǒu háidz ma?	Yǒu lyǎngge.
Dōu shr̀ nánháidz ma?	Yígè nánde, yíge nyǔde.
Nǐ yǒu péngyou ma?	Yǒu lyǎnggè.
Dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?	Yíge shr̀ jyūngwān, yíge shr̀ bīng.

L. 5

Tāmen dōu shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Yíge shr̀ Měigwo rén, yíge shr̀ Jūnggwo rén.
Dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Měigwo rén chr̄ Měigwo fàn, Jūnggwo rén chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.
Nǐ nèi lyǎngge péngyou dōu yǒu tàitai ma?	Wǒ nèige Měigwo péngyou yǒu tàitai.
Nǐ nèige Jūnggwo péngyou yǒu tàitai ma?	Wǒ nèige Jūnggwo péngyou méi tàitai.
Nǐ nèige Měigwo péngyou yǒu háidz ma?	Wǒ nèigè Měigwo péngyou méiyǒu háidz.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) Are all of your friends American officers?
2) Not both of these children are mine.
3) He buys both Chinese and American paintings.
4) Does he want to buy a shirt and a necktie?
5) M/Sgt. Wáng, Sgt. Jāng and Cpl. Lǐ, all have girl friends.
6) His two chairs are good.
7) We have two boys. We don't have girls.
8) All my friends want to eat Chinese food.
9) Are these two ladies both your friends?
10) Is that military policeman a corporal?

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ yǒu chyán ma?
2) Nǐ yàu mǎi shémma?
3) Nǐ yǒu tàitai ma?
4) Nǐ yǒu háidz ma?
5) Nǐmen chr̄ shémma fàn?
6) Nǐmen chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?
7) Nǐ shr̀ jyūngwān ma?
8) Shàngwèi, shàuwèi dōu yàu mài fángdz ma?
9) Shàngshr̀, jūngshr, syàshr̀ dōu yàu mǎi chyāng ma?
10) Syànbīng dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?
11) Nánren dōu mǎi yān ma?

12) Jūnggwo yān, Měigwo yān, nǐ dōu yǒu ma?

13) Nǐ yǒu jèige ménde yàushr ma?

14) Chyānbǐ, jř, nǐ dōu yǒu ma?

15) Nǐmen dōu yǒu nyǔpéngyou ma?

16) Nyǔsywésheng dōu yǒu nǎnpéngyou ma?

17) Tāmen dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?

18) Nǐ nèi lyǎnggè háidz dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?

19) Shéi yǒu lyǎngge nánháidz?

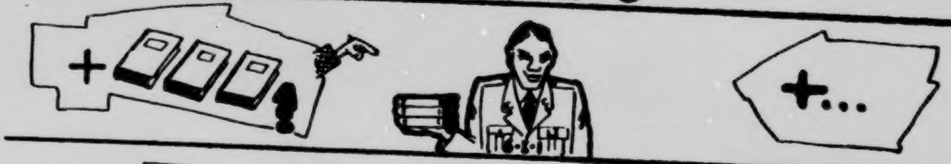
20) Shéi yǒu lyǎngge nyǔháidz?

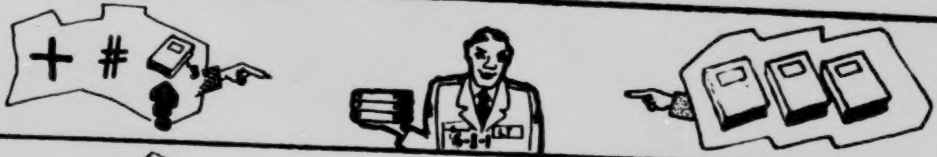
LESSON 6

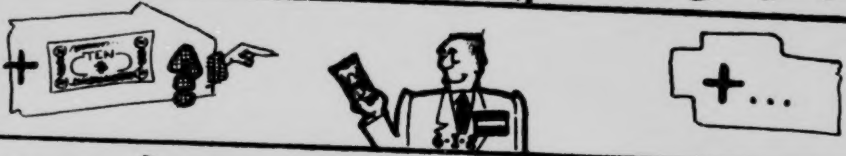
I. Structural Dialogues

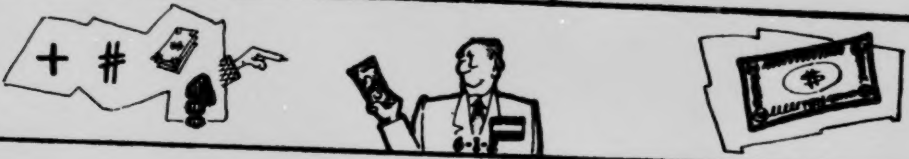
1.	Syān:	Lǐ Syàshr̀ yǒu sānběn shū ma?	Does Cpl. Lǐ have three books?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syàshr̀ yǒu sānběn shū.	Cpl. Lǐ has three books.
	Syān:	Lǐ Syàshr̀ yǒu jǐběn shū?	How many books does Cpl. Lǐ have?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syàshr̀ yǒu sānběn shū.	Cpl. Lǐ has three books.
2.	Syān:	Nèige Dégwo rén yǒu shŕkwài chyán ma?	Does that German have ten dollars?
	Sywé:	Nèige Dégwo rén yǒu shŕkwài chyán.	That German has ten dollars.
	Syān:	Nèige Dégwo rén yǒu dwōshǎu chyán?	How much money does that German have?
	Sywé:	Nèige Dégwo rén yǒu shŕkwài chyán.	That German has ten dollars.
3.	Syān:	Jèige sywésheng yǒu dwōshau chyán?	How much money does this student have?
	Sywé:	Tā yǒu chīkwài chyán.	He has seven dollars.
	Syān:	Nèige sywésheng yǒu jǐjāng jř?	How many sheets of paper does that student have?
	Sywé:	Nèige sywésheng yǒu bājāng jř.	That student has eight sheets of paper.
4.	Syān:	Jàu Shàngwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Does Capt. Jàu speak Chinese?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàngwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	Capt. Jàu speaks Chinese.
	Syān:	Nǐ shwō Jūnggwo hwà bùshwō?	Do you speak Chinese or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùshwō Jūnggwo hwà.	I don't speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Nǐ yàu shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do you want to speak Chinese?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	I want to speak Chinese.

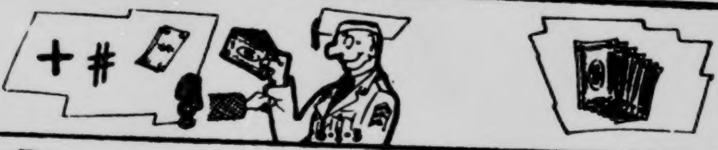
LESSON 6

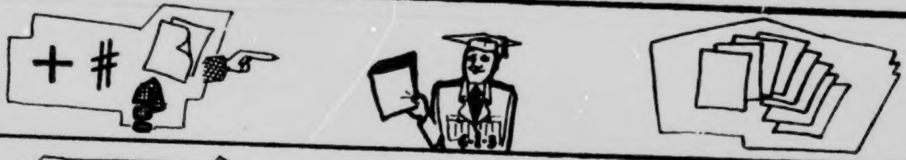


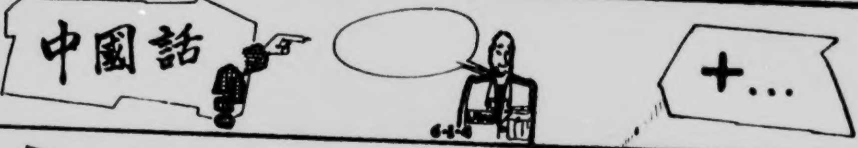


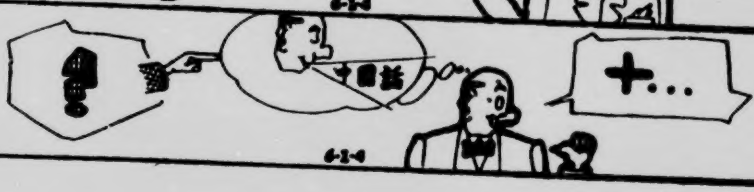






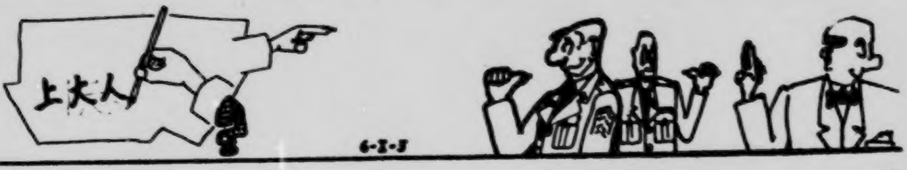


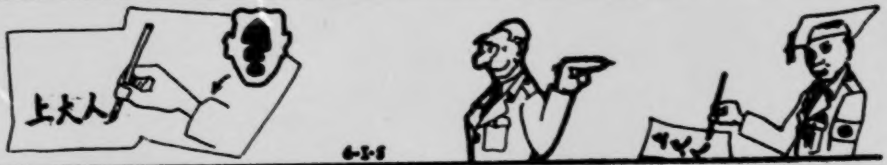


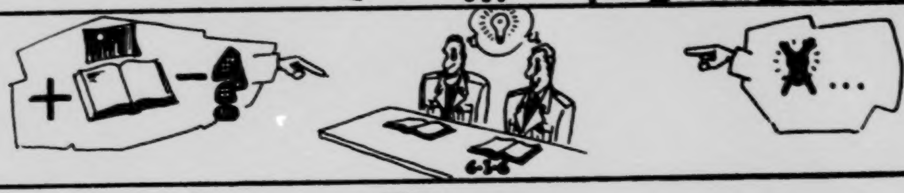


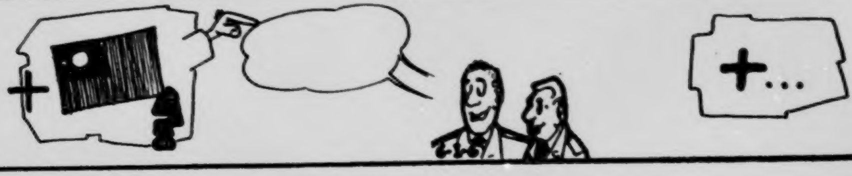
5.	Syān:	Nǐmen hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Do you know how to write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùdōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	Not all of us know how to write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Shéi hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀?	Who knows how to write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Nèige R̀běn sywésheng hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	That Japanese student knows how to write Chinese characters.
6.	Syān:	Tāmen hwèi nyàn Jūnggwo shū búhwèi?	Do they know how to read Chinese books or not?
	Sywé:	Tāmen búhwèi nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	They don't know how to read Chinese books.
	Syān:	Tāmen hwèi búhwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà?	Do they know how to speak Chinese?
	Sywé:	Tāmen hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	They know how to speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Tāmen hwèi shwō dwōshǎu Jūnggwo hwà?	How much Chinese can they speak?
	Sywé:	Tāmen hwèi shwō yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	They can speak a little Chinese.
7.	Syān:	Dzàijyàn.	Goodbye!
	Sywé:	Dzàijyàn.	Goodbye!

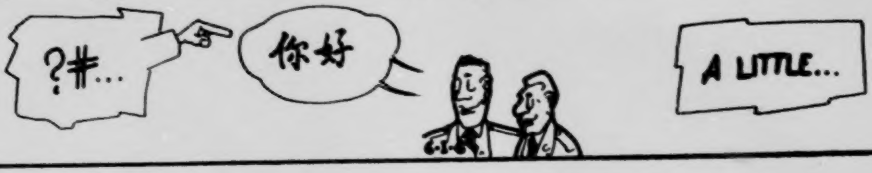
LESSON 6

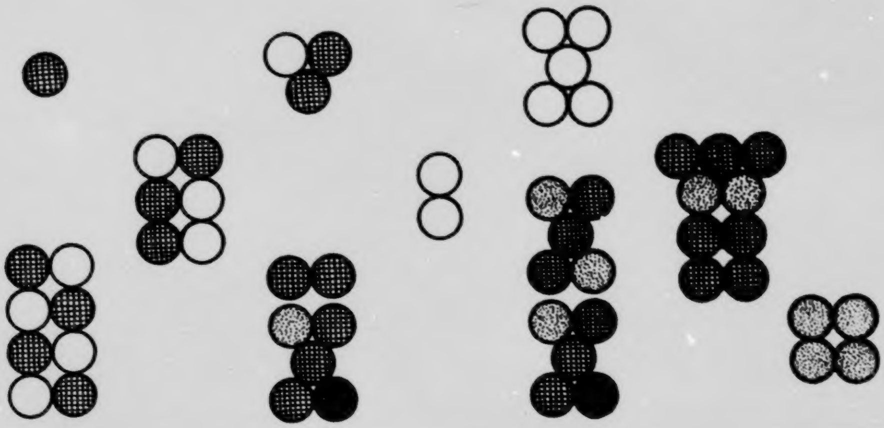












II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèigė lǐngdài mài dwōshau chyán?	How much does this necktie sell for?
	Sywé:	Jèigė lǐngdài mài sžkwài chyán.	This necktie sells for four dollars.
	Syān:	Nèigė chènshān mài dwōshau chyán?	How much does that shirt sell for?
	Sywé:	Nèigė chènshān mài sz̀kwài chyán.	That shirt sells for four dollars.
	Syān:	Wǒ yàu mǎi bǐ, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?	I want to buy a pen. Do you have it or not?
	Sywé:	Yǒu, jèigė Měigwo bǐ mài lyǒukwài chyán.	Yes, this American pen sells for six dollars.
	Syān:	Nèigė Dégwo bǐ mài jǐkwài chyán?	How much does that German pen sell for?
	Sywé:	Nèige Dégwo bǐ mài chíkwài chyán.	That German pen sells for seven dollars.
2.	Syān:	Jāng Shr̀gwānjǎng, nǐ hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Can you speak Chinese, M/Sgt. Jāng?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hwèi shwō yìdyǎr.	I can speak a little.
	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ buhwèi?	Can you write Chinese characters or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	I can't write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nǐmen dōu búhwei syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Can't any of you write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàngwèi hwèi syě yìdyǎr Jūnggwo dz̀.	Capt. Jàu can write a few Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Tā hwèi syě dwōshau Jūnggwo dz̀?	How many Chinese characters can he write?
	Sywé:	Tā hwèi syě jyǒugè Jūnggwo dz̀.	He can write nine Chinese characters.

3.	Syān:	Nǐ yàu chr̄ shémma fàn?	What kind of food do you want to eat?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu chr̄ Měigwo fàn.	I want to eat American food.
	Syān:	Nǐ búyàu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Don't you want to eat Chinese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búyàu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	I don't want to eat Chinese food.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai yàu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Does your wife want to eat Chinese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai yàu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	My wife wants to eat Chinese food.
4.	Syān:	Měigwo rén dōu hwèi nyàn Měigwo shū ma?	Can all Americans read American books?
	Sywé:	Měigwo rén dōu hwèi nyàn Měigwo shū.	All Americans can read American books.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo rén dōu hwèi nyàn Jūnggwo shū ma?	Can all Chinese read Chinese books?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo rén bùdōu hwèi nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	Not all Chinese can read Chinese books.
5.	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu jǐgè Jūnggwo péngyou?	How many Chinese friends do you have?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu shŕgè Jūnggwo péngyou.	I have ten Chinese friends.
	Syān:	Nǐde Jūnggwo péngyou dōu hwèi shwō Měigwo hwà ma?	Can all of your Chinese friends speak the American language?
	Sywé:	Tāmen bùdōu hwèi shwō Měigwo hwà.	Not all of them can speak the American language.
	Syān:	Jǐgè hwèi shwō Měigwo hwà, jǐge búhwèi shwō?	How many can speak the American language and how many can't?
	Sywé:	Wǔge hwèi shwō Měigwo hwà, wǔge búhwèi shwō.	Five can speak the American language and five can't.

6. Vocabulary

78.	bā	NU:	eight
79.	chī	NU:	seven
80.	Dégwo	N:	Germany
81.	dwōshǎu	NU:	how much, how many
82.	dz̀	N:	word (written character)
83.	dzàijyàn	IE:	goodbye
84.	èr	NU:	two
85.	hwà	N:	speech (spoken word); language
86.	hwèi	AV:	know how to, can
87.	-jāng	M:	(for paper, table, picture, etc.)
88.	jǐ-	NU:	how many (answer usually implies only a few)
89.	jyǒu	NU:	nine
90.	-kwài	M:	(for dollar, handkerchief, candy, etc.)
91.	Lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi	N:	Women's Army Corps (WAC)
92.	lyòu	NU:	six
93.	nyàn	V:	read, study
94.	R̀běn	N:	Japan
95.	sān	NU:	three
96.	shŕ	NU:	ten
97.	shwō	V:	say, speak
98.	syě	V:	write
99.	sz̀	NU:	four
100.	wǔ	NU:	five
101.	yìdyǎr	N:	a little, a bit, some

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Tones on chī and bā

Chī and bā are pronounced in the rising tone when followed by a falling tone. Otherwise they keep the level tone.

chīběn shū	seven books
bāběn shū	eight books
chíkwài chyán	seven dollars
bákwài chyán	eight dollars

2. Auxiliary Verbs (AV)

An auxiliary verb immediately precedes the main verb which it aids. When the context is clear in meaning, the main verb may be omitted.

S AV V Mod O

Nǐ hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Do you know how to write Chinese characters?
Wǒ hwèi.	Yes, I do.
Nǐ yàu syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Do you want to write Chinese characters?
Wǒ yàu.	Yes, I want to write Chinese characters.

3. Asking Prices

In asking and giving prices, the following patterns with mài (sell for) or shr̀ (is) are used. The verb mài or shr̀ may be omitted, because in asking and giving prices no verb is necessary.

Jèigè jūng mài dwōshau chyán?	How much does this clock sell for?
Jèigè jūng shr̀ dwōshau chyán?	How much does this clock sell for?
Jèigè jūng dwōshau chyán?	How much does this clock sell for?
Jèigè jūng mài sānkwài chyán.	This clock sells for three dollars.
Jèigè jūng shr̀ sānkwài chyán.	This clock sells for three dollars.
Jèigè jūng sānkwài chyán.	This clock sells for three dollars.

Translate the following

1) How much does this Chinese table sell for?
2) How much does that book sell for?
3) How much do those five sheets of paper sell for?
4) That clock sells for five dollars.
5) That picture sells for ten dollars.

Expressions such as "a piece" or "per volume" are translated "yíge" and "yìběn" and are used after the price.

Shū wǔkwài chyán yìběn.	Books are five dollars each volume.
Hwàr sz̀kwài chyán yìjāng.	Pictures are four dollars each.
Jwōdz shŕkwài chyán yìjāng.	Tables are ten dollars each.

4. Dwōshau and jǐ Compared

The question word jǐ (how many?) expects only a small number in reply, usually less than ten. Dwōshau (how many?), (how much?), (what quantity?), on the contrary, imposes no limit on the number or quantity expected in the answer. Jǐ always takes a measure, but dwōshau may be without a measure.

Nǐ yǒu jǐge byǎu?	How many watches do you have?
Wǒ yǒu lyǎngge.	I have two.
Nǐ yǒu dwōshau chyán?	How much money do you have?
Wǒ yǒu shŕkwài chyán.	I have ten dollars.

5. Yìdyǎr as a Number

Yìdyǎr is used without a measure, when it is used before a noun as a modifier. It means "a little", "a bit", or "a small amount of".

Tā yǒu yìdyǎr chyán.	He has some money.
Wǒ hwèi shwō yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	I can speak a little Chinese.
Syǎuháidz yàu yìdyǎr táng.	The child wants a little bit of candy.

6. Èr and lyǎng

In counting, the cardinal number èr is used. Lyǎng- is a bound form. (See Lesson 5, Note 6)

yī, èr, sān, sz̀	one, two, three, four
lyǎngge rén	two persons
lyǎngběn shū	two copies of books
lyǎngkwài chyán	two dollars

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān: Wáng Shàngwèi mǎi jǐběn shū?	How many books does Capt. Wáng buy?
	Sywé: Wáng Shàngwèi mǎi sānběn shū.	Capt. Wáng buys three books.
	Syān: Lǐ Jūngwèi yàu jǐkwài chyán?	How many dollars does 1st Lt. Lǐ want?
	Sywé: Lǐ Jūngwèi yàu sz̀kwài chyán.	1st. Lt. Lǐ wants four dollars.
	Syān: Jāng Shàuwèi yǒu jǐge péngyou?	How many friends does 2nd Lt. Jāng have?
	Sywé: Jāng Shàuwèi yóu wǔge péngyou.	2nd Lt. Jāng has five friends.
	Syān: Jàu Tàitai mài jǐjāng jwōdz?	How many tables does Mrs. Jàu sell?
	Sywé: Jàu Tàitai mài lyòujāng jwōdz.	Mrs. Jàu sells six tables.
2.	Syān: Nèigè Dégwo háidz yàu dwōshau shū?	How many books does that German child want?
	Sywé: Nèigè Dégwo háidz yàu chīběn shū.	That German child wants seven books.
	Syān: Nèigè Řběn syáujye yǒu dwōshau chyán?	How much money does that Japanese young lady have?
	Sywé: Nèigè Řběn syáujye yǒu bákwài chyán.	That Japanese young lady has eight dollars.
	Syān: Jèi lyǎnggè Dégwo rén mài dwōshaujāng bàu?	How many copies of the newspapers do these two Germans sell?
	Sywé: Nèi lyǎnggè Dégwo rén mài jyǒujāng bàu.	Those two Germans sell nine copies of the newspaper.
	Syān: Nǐ jèi lyǎngge péngyou mǎi dwōshaugè yǐdz?	How many chairs do these two friends of yours buy?

	Sywé:	Wǒ jèi lyǎnggė péngyou mǎi shŕgė yǐdz.	These two friends of mine buy ten chairs.
3.	Syān:	R̀běn rén syě Jūnggwo dz̀ bùsyě?	Do Japanese write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	R̀běn rén syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	Japanese write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	R̀běn rén búnyàn Jūnggwo shū ma?	Don't Japanese read Chinese books?
	Sywé:	R̀běn rén nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	Japanese read Chinese books.
	Syān:	R̀běn rén shwō bùshwō Jūnggwo hwà?	Do Japanese speak Chinese or not?
	Sywé:	R̀běn rén bùshwō Jūnggwo hwà.	Japanese don't speak Chinese.
4.	Syān:	Nǐmen yàu shwō R̀běn hwà ma?	Do you want to speak Japanese?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen búyàu shwō R̀běn hwà.	We don't want to speak Japanese.
	Syān:	Nǐmen yàu shwō Jūnggwo hwà búyàu?	Do you want to speak Chinese?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen yàu shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	We want to speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Nèige háidz yàu nyàn Dégwo shū búyàu?	Does that child want to read German books?
	Sywé:	Nèige háidz yàu nyàn Dégwo shū.	That child wants to read German books.
	Syān:	Nèige háidz búyàu nyàn Fàgwo shū ma?	Doesn't that child want to read French books?
	Sywé:	Néigė háidz búyàu nyàn Fàgwo shū.	That child doesn't want to read French books.
	Syān:	Měigwo sywésheng yàu búyàu syě Jūnggwo dz̀?	Do American students want to write Chinese characters?

Sywé:	Měigwo sywésheng yàu syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	American students want to write Chinese characters.
Syān:	Měigwo sywésheng hwèi búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀?	Can American students write Chinese characters?
Sywé:	Měigwo sywésheng búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	American students can't write Chinese characters.
5. Syān:	Jāng Jūngshr̀ hwèi shwō Fàgwo hwà ma?	Can Sergeant Jāng speak French?
Sywé:	Jāng Jūngshr̀ búhwèi shwō Fàgwo hwà.	Sergeant Jāng can't speak French.
Syān:	Jāng Jūngshr̀ hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà búhwèi?	Can Sergeant Jāng speak Chinese or not?
Sywé:	Jāng Jūngshr̀ hwèi shwō yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	Sergeant Jāng can speak a little Chinese.
Syān:	Wáng Jūngshr̀ búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Can't sergeant Wáng write Chinese characters?
Sywé:	Wáng Jūngshr̀ hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	Sergeant Wáng can write Chinese characters.
Syān:	Wáng Jūngshr̀ hwèi syě jǐge Jūnggwo dz̀?	How many Chinese characters can Sergeant Wáng write?
Sywé:	Wáng Jūngshr̀ hwèi syě yìdyǎr Jūnggwo dz̀.	Sergeant Wáng can write a few Chinese characters.
Syān:	Nà lyǎngge jūngshr̀ dōu hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwa, dōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Can both sergeants speak and write Chinese?
Sywé:	Yíge hwèi shwō yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwa; yíge hwèi syě yìdyǎr Jūnggwo dz̀.	One can speak a little and one can write a little.

6.

Syān:	Jūnggwo dz̀, nǐmen dōu yàu syě ma?	Do all of you want to write Chinese characters?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo dz̀, wǒmen dōu yàu syě.	All of us want to write Chinese characters.
Syān:	Jūnggwo dz̀, nǐmen yàu syě jǐgè?	How many Chinese characters do you want to write?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo dz̀, wǒmen yàu syě sz̀gè.	We want to write four Chinese characters.
Syān:	R̀běn shū, Jàu Syàshr̀ yàu nyàn búyàu?	Does Cpl. Jàu want to read Japanese books or not?
Sywé:	R̀běn shū, Jàu Syàshr̀ yàu nyàn.	Cpl. Jàu wants to read Japanese books.
Syān:	R̀běn shū, Jàu Syàshr̀ yàu nyàn jǐběn?	How many Japanese books does Cpl. Jàu want to read?
Sywé:	R̀běn shū, Jàu Syàshr̀ yàu nyàn wǔběn.	Cpl. Jàu wants to read five Japanese books.
Syān:	Dégwo shū, nèige lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi hwèi nyàn ma?	Can that WAC read German books?
Sywé:	Dégwo shū, nèige lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi hwèi nyàn.	That WAC can read German books.
Syān:	Dégwo shū, nèige lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi hwèi nyàn dwōshǎuběn?	How many German books can that WAC read?
Sywé:	Dégwo shū, nèige lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi hwèi nyàn shŕběn.	That WAC can read ten German books.
Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà, jèige jyūngwān hwèi búhwèi shwō?	Can this officer speak Chinese or not?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà, jèige jyūngwān hwèi shwō.	This officer can speak Chinese.

L. 6	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà, jèigė jyūngwān hwèi shwō dwōshău?	How much Chinese can this officer speak?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà, jèigė jyūngwān hwèi shwō yĭdyăr.	This officer can speak a little Chinese.
7.	Syān:	Fàgwo shū, nèigė syànbīng hwèi nyàn jĭbĕn?	How many French books can that military policeman read?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo shū, nèige syànbīng hwèi nyàn lyăngbĕn.	That military policeman can read two French books.
	Syān:	Fàgwo shū, mài dwōshău chyán?	How much does a French book sell for?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo shū, mài jyŏukwài chyán.	A French book sells for nine dollars.
	Syān:	Mĕigwo màudz mài dwōshău chyán?	How much does an American hat sell for?
	Sywé:	Mèigwo màudz mài bákwài chyán.	An American hat sells for eight dollars.
	Syān:	Jèi sz̆gè bĭ mài jĭkwài chyán?	How many dollars do these four pens sell for?
	Sywé:	Nèi sz̆gè bĭ mài lyăngkwài chyán.	Those four pens sell for two dollars.
	Syān:	Jèi sāngè lĭngdài mài jĭkwài chyán?	How many dollars do these three neckties sell for?
	Sywé:	Nèi sāngè lĭngdài mài sānkwài chyán.	Those three neckties sell for three dollars.
8.	Syān:	Jūnggwo shū, nĭ yàu măi ma?	Do you want to buy Chinese books?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo shū, wŏ yàu măi.	I want to buy Chinese books.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo shū, nĭ yàu măi jĭbĕn?	How many Chinese books do you want to buy?

Sywé: Jūnggwo shū, wǒ yàu mǎi yìběn.	I want to buy one Chinese book.
Syān: Jūnggwo shū, dwōshǎu chyán yìběn?	How much is a Chinese book?
Sywé: Jūnggwo shū, sžkwài chyán yìběn.	Chinese books are four dollars a piece.
Syān: R̀běn jūng dwōshau chyán yíge?	How much is one Japanese clock?
Sywé: R̀běn jūng chǐkwài chyán yíge.	Japanese clocks are seven dollars a piece.
Syān: Dégwo jř jǐkwài chyán yìjāng?	How many dollars for one sheet of German paper?
Sywé: Dégwo jř yíkwài chyán yìjāng.	One dollar for one sheet of German paper.
Syān: Syǎuháidzde byǎu jǐkwài chyán yíge?	How many dollars for one child's watch?
Sywé: Syǎuháidzde byǎu lyǎngkwài chyán yíge.	Two dollars for one child's watch.
9. Syān: Nǐmen dōu hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Can all of you speak Chinese?
Sywé: Wǒmen dōu hwèi shwō yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	All of us can speak a little Chinese.
Syān: Nǐmen dōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Can all of you write Chinese characters?
Sywé: Wǒmen dōu búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dž.	None of us can write Chinese characters.
Syān: Měigwo sywésheng dōu yàu nyàn Jūnggwo shū ma?	Do all American students want to read Chinese books?
Sywé: Měigwo sywésheng bùdōu yàu nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	Not all American students want to read Chinese books.

L. 6

Syān:	Měigwo sywésheng dōu hwèi shwō Dégwo hwà ma?	Can all American students speak German?
Sywé:	Měigwo sywésheng bùdōu hwèi shwō Dégwo hwà.	Not all American students can speak German

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

dwō	dwó	dwǒ	dwò	hā,	hwā	hwā,	hā
chwō	chwó	chwǒ	chwò	shén,	chén	chén,	shén
hwā	hwá	hwǎ	hwà	wǒ,	dwǒ	dwǒ,	wǒ
dyē	dyé	dyě	dyè	yè,	lyè	lyè,	yè
chyē	chyé	chyě	chyè				
shwā	shwá	shwǎ	shwà				

2.

yī	one	lyòu	six
èr	two	chī	seven
sān	three	bā	eight
sz̀	four	jyǒu	nine
wǒ	five	shŕ	ten

shŕ	ten	wǔ	five
jyǒu	nine	sz̀	four
bā	eight	sān	three
chī	seven	èr	two
lyòu	six	yī	one

3.

chr̄ sānge	yǒu sānge
chr̄ shŕge	yǒu shŕge
chr̄ wǔge	yǒu wǔge
chr̄ lyòuge	yǒu lyòuge

mǎi sānge	mài sānge
mǎi chíge	mài chíge
mǎi jyǒuge	mài jyǒuge
mǎi sz̀ge	mài sz̀ge

4. Tā yǒu jǐjāng jř?	Tā yǒu bājāng jř.
Nǐ yǒu dwōshau běn shū?	Wǒ yǒu jyǒuběn shū.
Tāmen hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Tāmen hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà.
Nǐmen hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Wǒmen búhwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.
Wǒmen nyàn shémma shū?	Wǒmen nyàn Jūnggwo shū.
Shémma rén shwō Řběn hwà?	Řběn rén shwō Řběn hwà.
Řběn rén hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Řběn rén hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.
Nǐ nèi lyǎnggè péngyou dōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Yíge hwèi syě, yígè búhwèi.
Nǐ nèi lyǎnggè péngyou dōu hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Yíge hwèi, yíge búhwèi.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) How many Chinese books and American books do you have?
2) How many sheets of paper do you want to buy?
3) Can you speak French, German and Japanese?
4) How many Chinese characters can you write?
5) How much for these ten Chinese books?
6) These nine Japanese soldiers can speak German.
7) I can speak a little French. I cannot write in French.
8) Chinese books sell for eight dollars each.
9) None of the six students can write Chinese characters.
10) I want to buy seven shirts and six neckties.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ shr̀ Dégwo rén ma?
2) Nǐ shr̀ R̀běn rén búshr̀?
3) Shéi shr̀ Fàgwo rén?
4) Nǐ hwèi shwō Dégwo hwà ma?
5) Nǐ hwèi syě Dégwo dz̀ búhwèi?
6) Shéi hwèi shwō Fàgwo hwà?
7) Shéi hwèi syě R̀běn dz̀?
8) Jèigè yǐdz mài jǐkwài chyán?
9) Jwōdz mài jǐkwài chyán yìjāng?
10) Nǐ yǒu jǐge syǎuháidz?

11) Nǐde háidz jǐge shr̀ nánde, jǐge shr̀ nyǔde?

12) Gāngkwēi dwóshau chyán yíge?

13) Shǒuchyāng dwóshau chyán yíge?

14) Nǐ yàu yān ma?

15) Shéi yǒu jyǒuge chènshān?

16) Nǐ yǒu bājāng Měigwo jwōdz ma?

17) Jāng Shàngwèi yǒu chíge gāngkwēi ma?

18) Shéi hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀?

19) Lǐ Syàshr̀ hwèi shwō Dégwo hwà ma?

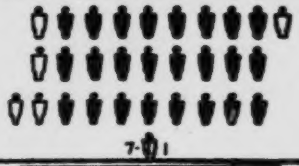
20) Nǐ hwèi syě R̀běn dz̀ búhwèi?

LESSON 7

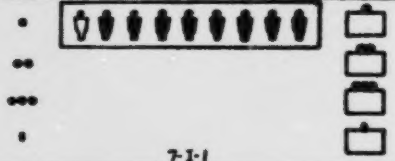
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nín gwèisyìng?	What is your name, sir?
	Sywé:	Bìsyìng Jāng. Nín gwèisyìng?	My name is Jāng. What is your name, sir?
	Syān:	Bìsyìng Wáng. Nèigè rén syìng shémma?	My name is Wáng. What is that man's name?
	Sywé:	Tā syìng Lǐ.	His name is Lǐ.
	Syān:	Lǐ Shr̀gwānjǎng shr̀ jèibānde bīng ma?	Is M/Sgt. Lǐ a soldier of this squad?
	Sywé:	Tā shr̀ jèibānde bānjǎng.	He is the Leader of this squad.
	Syān:	Jàu Shàngwèi shr̀ něibānde bānjǎng?	Of what squad is Capt. Jàu a squad leader?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàngwèi búshr̀ bānjǎng.	Capt. Jàu isn't a squad leader.
	Syān:	Tā shr̀ lyánjǎng ma?	Is he a company commander?
	Sywé:	Tā shr̀ jèilyánde lyánjǎng.	He is the Commander of this Company.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ syǐhwan chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Do you like to eat Chinese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùsyǐhwan chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	I don't like to eat Chinese food.
	Syān:	Nǐ syǐhwan chr̄ shémma fàn?	What kind of food do you like?
	Sywé:	Wǒ syǐhwan chr̄ Měigwo fàn.	I like to eat American food.
	Syān:	Nǐ bùsyǐhwan chr̄ R̀běn fàn ma?	Don't you like to eat Japanese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùsyǐhwan chr̄ R̀běn fàn.	I don't like to eat Japanese food.
	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi dzwò Měigwo fàn ma?	Can you prepare American food?

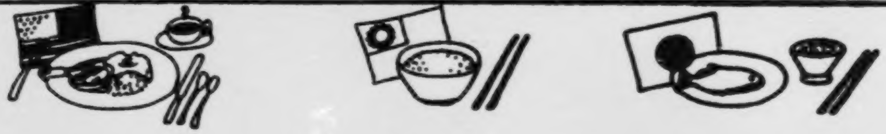
LESSON 7



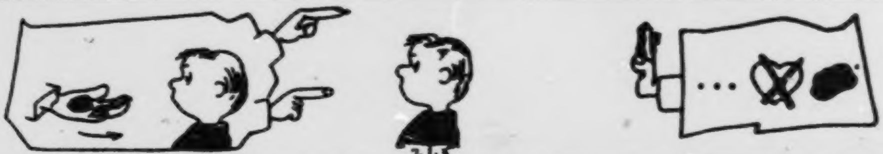
7- I



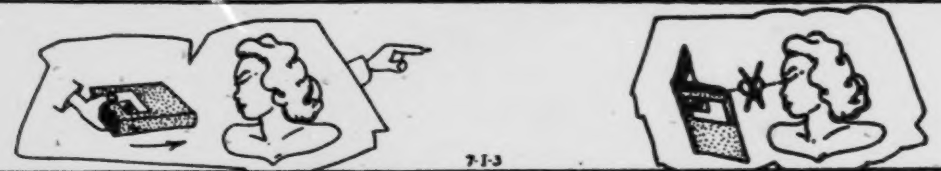
7-I-1



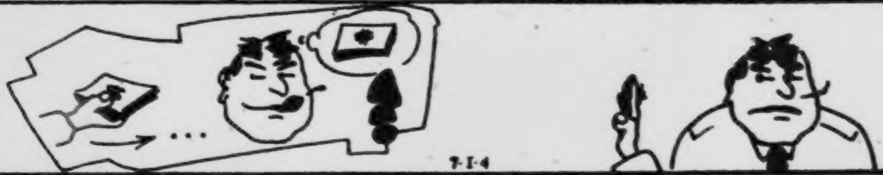
7-I-2



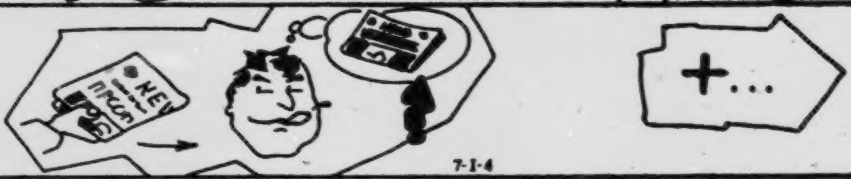
7-I-3



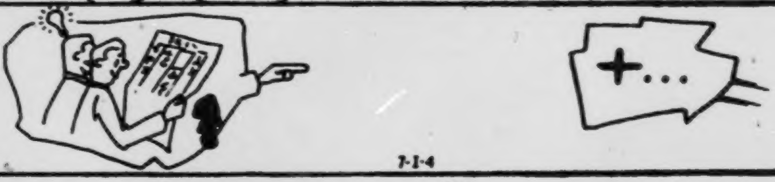
7-I-3



7-I-4



7-I-4



7-I-4

	Sywé:	Wǒ búhwèi dzwò Měigwo fàn.	I can't prepare American food.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai hwèi búhwèi dzwò Měigwo fàn?	Can your wife prepare American food?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai hwèi dzwò Měigwo fàn.	My wife can prepare American food.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai ài chr̄ shémma fàn?	What kind of food does your wife like?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai ài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	My wife likes to eat Chinese food.
3.	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi tā yíkwài táng.	Please give him a piece of candy.
	Sywé:	Tā búài chr̄ táng. Wǒ bùgěi tā táng.	He does not like to eat candy. I don't give him candy.
	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi Lǐ Syáujye yìběn Jūnggwo shū.	Please give Miss Lǐ a Chinese book.
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syáujye búài kàn Jūnggwo shū.	Miss Lǐ doesn't like to read Chinese books.
4.	Syān:	Wǒ gěi nǐ chyán, nǐ yàu búyàu?	I will give you money, do you want it or not?
	Sywé:	Nǐ gěi wǒ chyán, wǒ búyàu.	You give me money, I don't want it.
	Syān:	Wǒ gěi nǐ bàu, nǐ yàu búyàu?	I will give you a newspaper, do you want it?
	Sywé:	Nǐ gěi wǒ bàu, wǒ yàu.	You give me a newspaper, I want it.
	Syān:	Nǐmen sywé kàn Jūnggwo bàu ma?	Do you learn to read Chinese newspapers?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen sywé kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	We learn to read Chinese newspapers.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nín gwèisyìng?	What is your name, sir?
	Sywé:	Bìsyìng Lǐ. Syānsheng, nín gwèisyìng?	My name is Lǐ. What is your name, sir?
	Syān:	Bìsyìng Jāng. Nǐ shr̀ jèibānde sywésheng ma?	My name is Jāng. Are you a student of this class?
	Sywé:	Wǒ shr̀ jèibānde sywésheng.	I am a student of this class.
	Syān:	Nǐmen jèibān yǒu jǐge sywésheng?	How many students are there in this class of yours?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèibān yǒu báge sywésheng.	There are eight students in this class of ours.
	Syān:	Nèige Shàngwèi syìng shémma?	What is the name of that Captain?
	Sywé:	Nèige Shàngwèi syìng Wáng.	That Captain's name is Wáng.
	Syān:	Tā shr̀ jèibānde bānjǎng ma?	Is he the class monitor of this class?
	Sywé:	Tā shr̀ jèibānde bānjǎng.	He is the class monitor of this class.
	Syān:	Něige rén syìng Jàu?	Which man is named Jàu?
	Sywé:	Nèige shr̀gwānjǎng syìng Jáu.	That Master Sergeant is named Jàu.
2.	Syān:	Háidz dōu ài chr̄ táng ma?	Do all children like to eat candy?
	Sywé:	Háidz bùdōu ài chr̄ táng.	Not all children like to eat candy.
	Syān:	Nǐde háidz ài chr̄ táng ma?	Do your children like to eat candy?
	Sywé:	Wǒde nyǔháidz ài chr̄ táng, nánháidz búài chr̄ táng.	My daughter likes to eat candy, but my boy doesn't.

	Syān:	Nǐ nèigè nánháidz ài dzwò shémma?	What does your boy like to do.
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèigè nánháidz syǐhwan nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	That boy of mine likes to read Chinese books.
	Syān:	Tā bùsyǐhwan nyàn Měigwo shū ma?	Doesn't he like to read American books?
	Sywé:	Tā bùsyǐhwan nyàn Měigwo shū.	He doesn't like to read American books.
	Syān:	Tā hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Can he write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Tā hwèi syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	He can write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Tā hwèi syě dwōshau Jūnggwo dz̀?	How many Chinese characters can he write?
	Sywé:	Tā hwèi syě yìdyǎr Jūnggwo dz̀.	He can write a few Chinese characters.
3.	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi nèige háidz yìkwài táng.	Please give that child a piece of candy.
	Sywé:	Tā ài chr̄ táng ma?	Does he like to eat candy?
	Syān:	Tā ài chr̄ táng.	He likes to eat candy.
	Sywé:	Wǒ gěi nǐ yìkwài táng, nǐ yàu búyàu?	I will give you a piece of candy, do you want it or not?
	Syān:	Syèsye, wǒ búyàu. Wǒ yǒu táng. Nǐ yǒu shū ma?	Thank you. I don't want it. I have candy. Do you have books?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu lyǎngběn Jūnggwo shū.	I have two Chinese books.
	Syān:	Wǒ yàu yìběn Jūnggwo shū, nǐ gěi wǒ ma?	I want a Chinese book. Will you give it to me?
	Sywé:	Hǎu, wǒ gěi nǐ jèiběn Jūnggwo shū.	Fine, I will give you this Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi kàn Dégwo shū ma?	Can you read a German book?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hwèi kàn yìdyǎr.	I can read a little.

Syān:	Wǒ gěi nǐ jèiběn Dégwo shū.	I will give you this German book.
Sywé:	Syèsye.	Thank you.
Syān:	Búkèchi.	You're welcome.

4. Vocabulary

102.	ài	AV:	to like very much to, love to
103.	bān	N: M:	squad (military), class, section (for squad, class, etc.)
104.	bānjǎng	N:	squad leader; class monitor
105.	bìsyìng	IE:	my (humble) name is ......
106.	búkèchi	IE:	you're welcome
107.	chǐng	V:	please
108.	dzwò	V:	do, make, cook
109.	gěi	V:	give
110.	gwèisyìng	IE:	what is your (honorable) surname?
111.	kàn	V:	read; look, see
112.	lyán	N: M:	company (military) (for company)
113.	lyánjǎng	N:	company commander
114.	něi-	SP:	which?
115.	nín	N:	you (polite for nǐ)
116.	syǐhwan	AV:	like to
117.	syìng	EV:	be surnamed
118.	sywé	AV. V:	learn to learn
119.	táng	N:	sugar, candy

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Inquiring Names

The polite expression for asking someone's name is "Nín gwèisyìng?" or "Gwèisyìng?". Nín is the polite form for nǐ (you). Gwèi means "your honorable". The polite expression for asking someone's nationality is "Nín gwèigwó?" or "Gwèigwó?".

In giving one's name or nationality, bì (my humble) is used in polite expressions.

Nín gwèisyìng?	What is your(honorable)name?
Bìsyìng Jāng.	My(humble)name is Jāng.
Gwèigwó?	Your(honorable)country?
Bìgwó shr̀ Jūnggwo.	My(humble)country is China.

Wherever etiquette does not require a more formal form the following are used:

Nǐ syìng shémma?	What is your name?
Nǐ shr̀ něi gwó rén?	What nationality are you?

2. When someone thanks you, you may say "You are welcome" which is translated into Chinese, "Búkèchi", (lit. Don't stand on ceremony), or "Búsyè", (Don't mention it).

3. Direct and Indirect Objects

A verb in a Chinese sentence may take an object, and the normal word order is Subject-Verb-Object (SVO). Such an object is called a direct object.

S	V	dirO	
Wǒ	yàu	shū.	I want a book.
Tā	chr̄	Jūnggwo fàn.	He eats Chinese food.

A verb in a Chinese sentence may take two objects: a direct object and an indirect object. The normal word order is Subject-Verb-Indirect Object-Direct Object.

S	V	indO	dirO	
Wǒ	gěi	nǐ	shū.	I give you a book.
Tā	gěi	syǎuháidz	táng.	He gives children candy.
Syānsheng	gěi	sywésheng	jř.	The teacher gives students paper.

In these examples, the things being given are the direct objects and the person given to are the indirect objects.

Translate the following:

1) The corporal gives his wife a helmet.

2) The officer gives this soldier a shirt.

3) Mrs. Jāng gives her husband a necktie.

4) Those two friends of his give me two American books.

5) Her husband gives Mr. Jāng two tables.

6) Mr. Lǐ gives a Chinese watch to his wife.

7) Corporal Wáng gives those five soldiers five dollars.

The direct object of a sentence may be transposed to the beginning of the sentence, but not the indirect object. The word order of the sentence therefore is, Direct Object-Subject-Verb-Indirect Object.

Shū, wǒ gěi nǐ.	Books, I give you.
Chyán, wǒ bùgěi nǐ.	Money, I don't give you.

4. *Nyàn* and *kàn*

Although *nyàn* and *kàn* carry the same meaning, to read, but *nyàn* is used for reading aloud, to study books; while *kàn* is used for reading (silently).

Nyàn Jūnggwo shū.	Study Chinese books.
Kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	Read Chinese paper.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nín gwèisyìng?	What is your name, sir?
	Sywé:	Bìsyìng Lǐ. Nín gwèisyìng?	My name is Lǐ. What is your name, sir?
	Syān:	Bìsyìng Wáng. Nǐmende bānjǎng syìng shémma?	My name is Wáng. What is your class monitor's name?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende bānjǎng syìng Jàu.	Our class monitor's name is Jàu.
	Syān:	Syèsye, dzàijyàn.	Thank you. Goodbye!
	Sywé:	Búkèchi, dzàijyàn.	Your're welcome. Goodbye!
2.	Syān:	Yìbān yǒu jǐgė bīng?	How many soldiers are there in a squad?
	Sywé:	Yìbān yǒu jyǒugė bīng.	There are nine soldiers in a squad.
	Syān:	Nǐmende bānjǎng ài kàn shū ma?	Does your Squad Leader like to read?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende bānjǎng ài kàn shū.	Our Squad Leader likes to read.
	Syān:	Nǐmende lyánjǎng yǒu méiyǒu Jūnggwo syìng?	Does your Company Commander have a Chinese name?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende lyánjǎng méiyǒu Jūnggwo syìng.	Our Company Commander doesn't have a Chinese name.
	Syān:	Nǐmende lyánjǎng ài búài kàn bàu?	Does your Company Commander like to read newspapers or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende lyánjǎng búài kàn bàu.	Our Company Commander doesn't like to read newspapers.

3.	Syān:	Wáng Lyánjǎng syǐhwan kàn bàu ma?	Does Company Commander Wáng like to read newspapers?
	Sywé:	Wáng Lyánjǎng syǐhwan kàn bàu.	Company Commander Wáng likes to read newspapers.
	Syān:	Wáng Lyánjǎng bùsyǐhwan kàn shū ma?	Doesn't Company Commander Wáng like to read books?
	Sywé:	Wáng Lyánjǎng bùsyǐhwan kàn shū.	Company Commander Wáng doesn't like to read books.
	Syān:	Lǐ Bānjǎng syǐhwan chr̄ Rběn fàn bùsyǐhwan?	Does Squad Leader Lǐ like to eat Japanese food?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Bānjǎng syǐhwan chr̄ R̀běn fàn.	Squad Leader Lǐ likes to eat Japanese food.
	Syān:	Lǐ Bānjǎng syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan dzwò Rběn fàn?	Does Squad Leader Lǐ like to cook Japanese food or not?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Bānjǎng bùsyǐhwan dzwò R̀běn fàn.	Squad Leader Lǐ doesn't like to cook Japanese food.
4.	Syān:	Jèibān sywésheng sywé shémma?	What do the students of this class study?
	Sywé:	Jèibān sywésheng sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	The students of this class learn to speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Jèibān sywésheng sywé syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Do the students of this class learn to write Chinese characters.
	Sywé:	Jèibān sywésheng sywé syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	The students of this class learn to write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nèilyán bǐng sywé kàn Dégwo bàu bùsywé?	Are the soldiers in that Company learning to read German newspapers or not?

	Sywé:	Nèilyán bīng bùsywé kàn Dégwo bàu.	The soldiers in that Company do not learn to read German newspapers.
	Syān:	Nèilyán bīng sywé shémma?	What is that Company of soldiers studying?
	Sywé:	Nèilyán bīng sywé nyàn Fàgwo shū.	That Company of soldiers is learning to read French books.
5.	Syān:	Bānjǎng gěi nǐ shémma?	What does the Squad Leader give you?
	Sywé:	Bānjǎng gěi wǒ bùchyāng.	The Squad Leader gives me a rifle.
	Syān:	Bānjǎng gěi nǐ shǒuchyāng bùgěi?	Does the Squad Leader give you a pistol or not?
	Sywé:	Bānjǎng bùgěi wǒ shǒuchyāng.	The Squad Leader doesn't give me a pistol.
	Syān:	Shéi gěi nǐ shū?	Who gives you a book?
	Sywé:	Lyánjǎng gěi wǒ shū.	The Company Commander gives me a book.
	Syān:	Lyánjǎng gěi bùgěi nǐ chyán?	Does the Company Commander give you money or not?
	Sywé:	Lyánjǎng bùgěi wǒ chyán.	The Company Commander doesn't give me money.
6.	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi tā nèige chyānbǐ.	Please give that pencil to him.
	Sywé:	Wǒ gěi tā jèige chyānbǐ.	I give him this pencil.
	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ kàn jèijāng Jūnggwo bàu.	Please read this sheet of Chinese newspaper.
	Sywé:	Wǒ búhwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	I can't read Chinese newspapers.

7.	Syān:	Wŏ gĕi tā Mĕigwo bàu. Tā kàn búkàn?	I will give him an American newspaper. Will he read it or not?
	Sywé:	Chĭng nĭ gĕi tā Mĕigwo bàu. Tā hwèi kàn Mĕigwo bàu.	Please give him an American newspaper. He can read it.
	Syān:	Wŏ yàu gĕi nĭ jèikwài táng. Nĭ chr̄ bùchr̄?	I want to give you this piece of candy. Will you eat it or not?
	Sywé:	Chĭng nĭ gĕi wŏ jèikwài táng. Wŏ ài chr̄ táng.	Please give me this piece of candy. I like to eat candy.
8.	Syān:	Nín gwèisyìng?	What is your name, sir?
	Sywé:	Bìsyìng Lĭ. Nín gwèisyìng?	My name is Lĭ. What is your name, sir?
	Syān:	Bìsyìng Jàu. Nèi lyăngge lyánjăng dōu syìng Wáng ma?	My name is Jàu. Are both of those two Company Commanders named Wáng?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyăngge lyánjăng bùdōu syìng Wang. Jèigè syìng Wáng, nèige búsyìng Wáng.	Not both of the two Company Commanders are named Wáng. This one is named Wáng and that one isn't.
9.	Syān:	Nĭ ài sywé syĕ Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Do you like to learn to write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Wŏ ài sywé syĕ Jūnggwo dz̀.	I like to learn to write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nĭ ài búài sywé dzwò Jūnggwo fàn?	Do you like to learn to cook Chinese food or not?
	Sywé:	Wŏ búài sywé dzwò Jūnggwo fàn.	I don't like to learn to cook Chinese food.
	Syān:	Nĭ syĭhwan sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà bùsyĭhwan?	Do you like to learn to speak Chinese or not?
	Sywé:	Wŏ syĭhwan sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	I like to learn to speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Nĭ bùsyĭhwan sywé kàn Jūnggwo bàu ma?	Don't you like to learn to read Chinese newspapers?
	Sywé:	Wŏ bùsyĭhwan sywé kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	I don't like to learn to read Chinese newspapers.

10.	Syān:	Nǐmen jèibān sywésheng dōu ài chr̄ R̀běn fàn ma?	Do all the students of this class of yours like to eat Japanese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèibān sywésheng bùdōu ài chr̄ R̀běn fàn.	Not all of the students of this class of ours like to eat Japanese food.
	Syān:	Nǐmen jèibān sywésheng dōu búài dzwò R̀běn fàn ma?	Don't all the students of this class of yours like to cook Japanese food?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèibān sywésheng dōu búài dzwò R̀běn fàn.	None of the students of this class of ours like to cook Japanese food.
	Syān:	Nèilyán bīng dōu syǐhwan tāmende lyánjǎng ma?	Do all the soldiers of that Company like their company Commander?
	Sywé:	Nèilyán bīng dōu syǐhwan tāmende lyánjǎng.	All the soldiers of that Company like their Company Commander.
	Syān:	Nèilyán bīng dōu syǐhwan lyánjǎngde háidz ma?	Do all the soldiers of that Company like the children of the Company Commander?
	Sywé:	Nèilyán bīng dōu bùsyǐhwan lyánjǎngde háidz.	None of the soldiers of that Company like the children of the Company Commander.
11.	Syān:	Měigwo jř, Fàgwo jř, bānjǎng dōu gěi nǐ ma?	Does the Class Monitor give you both American paper and French paper?
	Sywé:	Měigwo jř, bānjǎng gěi wǒ; Fàgwo jř, bānjǎng bùgěi wǒ.	The Class Monitor gives me American paper, but not French paper.
	Syān:	Měigwo jř, bānjǎng gěi nǐ dwōshǎujāng?	How many sheets of American paper does the Class Monitor give you?
	Sywé:	Měigwo jř, bānjǎng gěi wǒ shŕjāng.	The Class Monitor gives me ten sheets of American paper.
	Syān:	Fàgwo táng, R̀běn táng, nǐ dōu gěi nèige péngyou ma?	Do you give that friend French and Japanese candy?

	Sywé:	Fàgwo táng, wǒ gěi nèige pēngyou; R̀běn táng, wǒ bùgěi nèige péngyou.	I give that friend French candy, but not Japanese candy.
	Syān:	Fàgwo táng, nǐ gěi nèige péngyou jǐkwài?	How many pieces of French candy do you give that friend?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo táng, wǒ gěi nèige péngyou szkwài.	I give that friend four pieces of French candy.
12.	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà, Dégwo hwà, nǐ dōu yàu sywé ma?	Do you want to learn both Chinese and German?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà, wǒ yàu sywé; Dégwo hwà, wǒ búyàu sywé.	I want to learn Chinese, but not German.
	Syān:	Nyǔháidz, tāmen lyǎnggè rén dōu syǐhwan ma?	Do both of them like girls?
	Sywé:	Nyǔháidz, tāmen lyǎnggè rén bùdōu syǐhwan. Tàitai syǐhwan, syānsheng bùsyǐhwan.	They don't both like girls. The wife likes girls, but the husband doesn't.
	Syān:	Fàgwo shū, Jāng Lyánjǎng, Jàu Lyánjǎng dōu búài nyàn ma?	Don't both Company Commanders Jāng and Jàu like to read French books?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo shū, Jāng Lyánjǎng, Jàu Lyánjǎng dōu búài nyàn.	Neither Company Commander Jāng nor Company Commander Jàu like to read French books.
13.	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yān.	Please give me cigarettes.
	Sywé:	Wǒ gěi nǐ yān. Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nǐde bǐ.	I give you cigarettes. Please give me your pen.
	Syān:	Wǒ gěi nǐ wǒde bǐ. Dzàijyàn.	I give you my pen. Goodbye!
	Sywé:	Syèsye. Dzàijyàn.	Thank you. Goodbye!
14.	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ lyǎngjāng jř.	Please give me a couple sheets of paper.

Sywé:	Wǒ gěi nǐ lyǎngjāng jř. Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìběn shū.	I give you a couple of sheets of paper. Please give me a book.
Syān:	Wǒ gěi nǐ yìběn shū. Dzàijyàn.	I give you a book. Goodbye!
Sywé:	Syèsye. Dzàijyàn.	Thank you. Goodbye!

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.	kān	kán	kǎn	kàn	dān, dāng	dāng, dān
	chīn	chín	chǐn	chìn	nán, náng	náng, nán
	kwān	kwán	kwǎn	kwàn	kǎn, kwǎn	kwǎn, kǎn
	shwān	shwán	shwǎn	shwàn	hàn, hwàn	hwàn, hàn
	līn	lín	lǐn	lìn		
	shān	shán	shǎn	shàn		

2.	nín gwèisyìng	bìsyìng Jāng
	nín gwèisyìng	bìsyìng Wáng
	nín gwèisyìng	bìsyìng Lǐ
	nín gwèisyìng	bìsyìng Jàu
	yàu mǎi shū	chǐng mǎi shū
	yàu mǎi táng	chǐng mǎi táng
	yàu mǎi byǎu	chǐng mǎi byǎu
	yàu mǎi hwàr	chǐng mǎi hwàr
	shéi yǒu jūng	tā yǒu jūng
	shéi yǒu chyán	tā yǒu chyán
	shéi yǒu bǐ	tā yǒu bǐ
	shéi yǒu bàu	tā yǒu bàu

3.	Nín yǒu jǐge péngyou?	Wǒ yǒu sz̀ge péngyou.
	Tāmen dōu syìng shémma?	Yíge syìng Jāng, yíge syìng Wáng, yíge syìng Lǐ, yíge syìng Jàu.
	Jāng Syānsheng ài dzwò shémma?	Jāng Syānsheng ài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.

Wáng Syānsheng ài dzwò shémma?	Wáng Syānsheng ài dzwò Měigwo fàn.
Lǐ Syānsheng syǐhwan dzwò shémma?	Lǐ Syānsheng syǐhwan kàn Fàgwo bàu.
Jàu Syānsheng syǐhwan dzwò shémma?	Jàu Syānsheng syǐhwan shwō Jūnggwo hwà.
Tāmen dōu yǒu tàitai ma?	Wáng Syānsheng yǒu tàitai, wǒ nèi sānge péngyou dōu méiyǒu tàitai.
Tāmen dōu yǒu syǎuháidz ma?	Wáng Syānsheng yǒu lyǎngge háidz, wǒ nèi sānge péngyou dōu méi háidz.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) All students of this class like to read newspapers.
2) Captain Wáng is our Company Commander.
3) Do Chinese children like to eat candy?
4) Please give me a couple of dollars.
5) How much is ten pieces of candy?
6) Which shirt is yours? Which shirt is mine?
7) Is that lady your girl friend? What is her name?
8) Miss Lǐ knows how to cook Chinese food.
9) Which one of these two neckties do you like?
10) Do you like to eat Chinese food? I can cook Chinese food.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐmen jèi yìbān yǒu jǐge sywésheng?
2) Nǐmen jèi yìbānde sywésheng dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?
3) Jèi bānde sywésheng dōu shr̀ bīng ma?
4) Nǐmende bānjǎng syìng shémma?
5) Nǐmende bānjǎng shr̀ shàngwèi ma?
6) Nǐmen dōu ài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn búài?
7) Shéi búài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn?
8) Shéi hwèi dzwò Jūnggwo fàn?
9) Nǐ kàn bàu búkàn?
10) Nǐ kàn Jūnggwo bàu búkàn?
11) Něige chyānbǐ shr̀ nǐde?

L. 7

12) Nĭbĕn shū shr̀ nĭde?

13) Nĭ syĭhwan Fàgwo màudz ma?

14) Nĭ yàu măi Fàgwo màudz ma?

15) Yígè Fàgwo màudz mài dwóshau chyán?

16) Nĭmende lyánjăng syìng shémma?

17) Nĭmende lyánjăng shr̀ shàngwèi búshr̀?

18) Nĭ syĭhwan sywé syĕ Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?

19) Nĭ syĭhwan bùsyĭhwan sywé shwō Dégwo hwà?

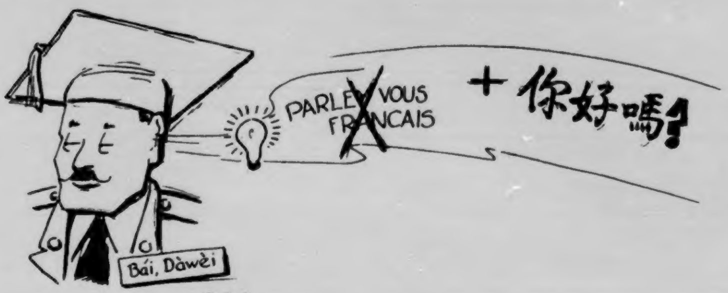
20) Nĭ syĭhwan sywé dzwò R̀bĕn fàn bùsyĭhwan?

LESSON 8

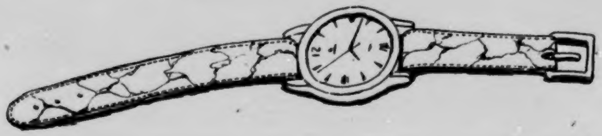
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nèige sywésheng syìng shémma?	What is that student's surname?
	Sywé:	Nèige sywésheng syìng Bái.	That student is named Bái.
	Syān:	Tāde míngdz jyàu shémma?	What is his given name?
	Sywé:	Tāde míngdz jyàu Dàwèi.	His given name is David.
	Syān:	Tā dǔng Fàgwo hwà ma?	Does he understand French?
	Sywé:	Tā bùdǔng Fàgwo hwà.	He doesn't understand French.
	Syān:	Tā dǔng Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Does he understand Chinese?
	Sywé:	Tā dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	He understands a little Chinese.
	Syān:	Nèige dūngsyi shr̀ nǐde ma?	Is that thing yours?
	Sywé:	Nèige dūngsyi shr̀ wǒde.	That thing is mine.
	Syān:	Nèige dūngsyi jyǎu shémma?	What is that thing called?
	Sywé:	Nèige dūngsyi jyàu byǎu.	That thing is called a watch.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu gēge dìdi méiyǒu?	Do you have elder and younger brothers or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu gēge kěshr̀ wǒ méiyǒu dìdi.	I have elder brothers but I don't have younger brothers.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu jǐge gēge?	How many elder brothers do you have?

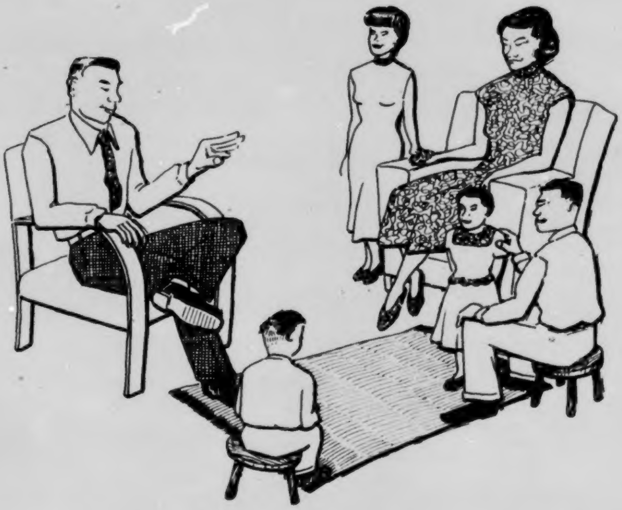
LESSON 8


~~PARLEZ VOUS FRANCAIS~~
+ 你好嗎?
Bái, Dàwèi

8-I-1



8-I-1



8-I-2
8-I-3

	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu lyǎngge gēge.	I have two elder brothers.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu jyějye mèimei ma?	Do you have elder and younger sisters?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu jyějye, kěshr̀ wǒ méiyǒu mèimei.	I have elder sisters, but I don't have younger sisters.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?	What folks do you have at your home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā yǒu fùchin, mǔchin, gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei.	In my family there are my father, mother, elder brother, younger brother, elder sister, and younger sister.
	Syān:	Nǐ fùchin, mǔchin yě shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do your parents speak Chinese also?
	Sywé:	Wǒ fùchin, mǔchin yě shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	My parents also speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Nǐ mèimei ài chànggēr ma?	Does your younger sister like to sing?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mèimei búài chànggēr, kěshr̀ ài dzwòfàn.	My younger sister doesn't like to sing, but she likes to cook.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyějye yě búài chànggēr ma?	Doesn't your elder sister also like to sing?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyějye yě búài chànggēr.	My elder sister doesn't like to sing either.
4.	Syān:	Nǐ gēge, dìdi dōu syǐhwan nyàn Jūnggwo shū ma?	Do your elder and younger brothers like to read Chinese books?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dìdi syǐhwan nyàn Jūnggwo shū, kěshr̀ wǒ gēge bùsyǐhwan nyàn.	My younger brother likes to read Chinese books, but my elder brother doesn't.

	Syān:	Nǐ mèimei ài chàng jèige gēr, tā yě ài chàng nèige gēr ma?	Your younger sister likes to sing this song. Does she also like to sing that song?
	Sywé:	Tā ài chàng jèige gēr, kěshr̀ tā búài chàng nèigè gēr.	She likes to sing this song, but she doesn't like to sing that song.
5.	Syān:	Jūnggwo yǒu R̀běn rén méiyǒu?	Are there Japanese in China?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo yǒu R̀běn rén yě yǒu Měigwo rén.	There are Japanese in China and Americans too.
	Syān:	Měigwo yě yǒu R̀běn rén ma?	Are there Japanese in America too?
	Sywé:	Měigwo yě yǒu R̀běn rén.	There are Japanese in America too.
6.	Syān:	Nǐmen jèibān yǒu jǐge rén?	How many persons are there in this class of yours?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèibān yǒu báge rén.	There are eight in our class.
	Syān:	Nǐmen jèibān yǒu Dégwo rén méiyou?	Are there any Germans in your class?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèibān méiyou Dégwo rén.	There are none.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèigè dūngsyi jyàu shémma?	What is this (thing) called?
	Sywé:	Jèigè dūngsyi jyàu gāngkwēi.	This (thing) is called a helmet.
	Syān:	Nèigè dūngsyi jyàu shémma míngdz?	What is the name of that thing?
	Sywé:	Nèigè dūngsyi jyàu shǒuchyāng.	That is called a pistol.
	Syān:	Jèi shr̀ Jūnggwo dūngsyi ma?	Is this Chinese?
	Sywé:	Nèi búshr̀ Jūnggwo dūngsyi, nèi shr̀ Měigwo dūngsyi.	That isn't Chinese. That is an American thing.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz ma?	Do you have a Chinese given name?
	Sywé:	Wǒ méiyǒu Jūnggwo míngdz.	I don't have a Chinese given name.
	Syān:	Nǐde Jūnggwo syìng shr̀ shémma?	What is your Chinese surname?
	Sywé:	Wǒde Jūnggwo syìng shr̀ Bái.	My Chinese surname is Bái.
2.	Syān:	Wǒ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, nǐ dǔng bùdǔng?	When I speak Chinese, do you understand or not?
	Sywé:	Nǐ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, wǒ dǔng.	When you speak Chinese, I understand.
	Syān:	Wǒ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, nǐ dōu dǔng ma?	When I speak Chinese, do you understand me completely?
	Sywé:	Nǐ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, wǒ bùdōu dǔng.	When you speak Chinese, I can't understand you completely.

	Syān:	Wǒ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, nǐ dǔng dwōshau?	When I speak Chinese, how much do you understand?
	Sywé:	Nǐ shwō Jūnggwo hwà, wǒ dǔng yìdyǎr.	I understand you a little when you speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Nèigè sywésheng shwō Jūnggwo hwà, ní dǔng bùdǔng?	When that student speaks Chinese, do you understand him?
	Sywé:	Nèigè sywésheng shwō Jūnggwo hwà, wǒ dōu bùdǔng.	When that student speaks Chinese, I don't understand him at all.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?	What kin do you have at home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā yǒu wǒ fùchin, wǒ mǔchin, wǒ tàitai, lyǎngge háidz.	At home there are my father, my mother, my wife, and two children.
	Syān:	Nǐ méiyǒu gēge, dìdi ma?	Don't you have elder and younger brothers?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu yígè gēge, lyǎnggè dìdi.	I have an elder brother and two younger brothers.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě yǒu jyějye, mèimei ma?	Do you have also elder and younger sisters?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yě yǒu jyějye, mèimei.	I also have elder and younger sisters.
	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu jǐgè jyějye, jǐgè mèimei?	How many elder sisters and younger sisters do you have?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu yígè jyějye kěshr wǒ méiyou mèimei.	I have an elder sister, but I don't have a younger sister.
	Syān:	Nǐ gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei dōu dzwò shémma?	What do your elder and younger brothers and sisters do?
	Sywé:	Tāmen dōu shr̀ sywésheng.	They are all students.

L. 8

Syān:	Tāmen dōu sywé shémma?	What do all of them study?
Sywé:	Tāmen dōu sywé Jūnggwo hwà.	All of them are learning the Chinese language.
Syān:	Tāmen dōu hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Can all of them speak Chinese?
Sywé:	Tāmen dōu hwèi shwō yìdyǎr.	All of them can speak a little.
Syān:	Tāmen yě hwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu ma?	Can all of them read Chinese newspapers too?
Sywé:	Tāmen hwèi kàn yìdyǎr Jūnggwo shū, kěshr̀ búhwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	All of them can read Chinese books a little, but they can't read Chinese newspapers.
Syān:	Tāmen sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà, tāmen yě sywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr ma?	They learn to speak Chinese. Do they also learn to sing Chinese songs?
Sywé:	Tāmen sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà, kěshr bùsywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr.	They learn to speak Chinese, but they don't learn to sing Chinese songs.

4. Vocabulary

120.	Bái	N:	(surname)
121.	chàng	V:	sing
122.	chànggēr	VO:	sing songs
123.	Dàwèi	N:	(transliteration of David)
124.	dìdi	N:	younger brother
125.	dūngsyi	N:	thing
126.	dǔng	V:	understand
127.	fùchin	N:	father
128.	gēge	N:	elder brother
129.	gēr	N:	song
130.	jyā	N:	home
131.	jyàu	EV:	is called, named
132.	jyějye	N:	elder sister
133.	kěshr	MA:	but, however
134.	mèimei	N:	younger sister
135.	míngdz	N:	given name
136.	mǔchin	N:	mother
137.	yě	A:	also, too, (with negative statements) either

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Moveable Adverbs (MA)

There are two kinds of adverbs in Chinese: fixed adverbs (A) and moveable adverbs (MA). An adverb always precedes the verb or another adverb, but follows the subject (shū, bàu, wǒ dōu mǎi); a moveable adverb may be moved in front of the subject of the verb as well as immediately before the verb. Kěshr̀ (but) is a moveable adverb.

Wǒ yǒu chyán, kěshr̀ tā méiyou chyán.	I have money, but he doesn't.
Wǒ yǒu chyán, tā kěshr̀ méiyou chyán.	I have money, but he doesn't.

2. Syìng and jyàu Compared

Syìng refers to the surname, but jyàu refers either to the full name or the given name depending on the context.

Nǐ syìng shémma?	What is your name? (informal)
Wǒ syìng Jāng.	My name is Jāng. (informal)
Tā jyàu shémma?	What is his name? (informal)
Tā jyàu Wáng Dàwèi.	His name is David Wáng. (informal)
Tā jyàu Dàwèi.	His name is David. (informal)

3. Impersonal use of yǒu

When no subject is given before yǒu (have), the verb becomes impersonal and is equivalent to "there is" or "there are".

A place word may be given before the impersonal yǒu.

Yǒu yige rén.	There is a man.
Jūnggwo yǒu Měigwo rén.	There are Americans in China.
Měigwo yě yǒu Jūnggwo rén.	There are Chinese in America too.

Translate the following

1) I have shirts, but he doesn't.

2) I give you a book, but he doesn't.

3) These two friends give me money, but those two friends don't.

4) I give you the book, but I don't give you the watch.

5) This necktie and this helmet I give you; but that shirt I don't.

6) How many people are there in America?

7) How many boys are there in your family?

8) How many books are there at your home?

Adverb yě

Yě is an adverb but not a moveable adverb. Therefore it precedes the verb but can not be moved before the subject. The verb following yě must be given and can not be omitted. NEVER say wǒ kàn shū yě bàu, but wǒ kàn shū yě kàn bàu. When there are two or more objects to the same verb, the verb is usually repeated with each object, and yě is used to introduce each subsequent predicate.

Wǒ yàu shū, yě yàu bàu.	I want books and newspapers too.
Shū wǒ yàu, bàu wǒ yě yàu.	I want books and newspapers too.
Tā yàu shū, wǒ yě yàu shū.	He wants books and I do too.
Wǒ syǐhwan jūng, yě syǐhwan byǎu, yě syǐhwan bǐ.	I like clocks, watches and pens.

Translate the following:

1) Mr. Jāng has books; Mrs. Jāng also has books.

2) Mr. Lǐ knows how to sing; Mrs. Lǐ does too.

3) Corporal Wáng loves to speak Chinese, and Corporal Bái does too.

4) These two girl friends of his want to give him three dollars; those two boy friends of his also want to give him three dollars.

5) Miss Lǐ likes to sing, to cook, and read.

5. Verb-Object Compound (VO)

Some verbs in Chinese are commonly associated with generalized objects, which together form single concepts in the Western mind and translate into single English intransitive verbs. Such are called VO compounds.

In English, these generalized objects are more often implied, whereas in Chinese they are always expressed, unless they have just appeared in the immediate context. For example, in English one says, "I want to read," but in Chinese it becomes, "I want to read book." Wǒ yàu kànshū.

The other VO compounds are:

chr̄fàn	eat	syědz̀	write	dzwòfàn	cook
shwōhwà	speak, talk	chànggēr	sing	kànbàu	read newspaper

When a specific object is indicated, it replaces the generalized object, and is never used together with it. For instance, one says:

Wǒ yàu kànbàu, (I want to read newspaper), NEVER

Wǒ yàu kànshū bàu.

Like any verb and its object, the object within a VO compound may be modified:

Wǒ yàu chr̄fàn.	I want to eat.
Wǒ yàu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	I want to eat Chinese food.

NEVER Wǒ yàu chr̄fàn Jūnggwo fàn.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

	Syān:	Nǐ syìng shémma?	What is your surname?
	Sywé:	Wǒ syìng Jāng.	My surname is Jāng.
	Syān:	Nǐde míngdz jyàu shémma?	What is your given name?
	Sywé:	Wǒde míngdz jyàu Dàwèi.	My given name is David.
	Syān:	Nǐ péngyou gwèisyìng?	What is your friend's surname?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyou syìng Bái.	My friend's surname is Bái.
	Syān:	Nǐ péngyoude míngdz jyàu shémma?	What is your friend's given name?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyoude míngdz jyàu Dàwèi.	My friend's given name is David.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ fùchin yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz ma?	Does your father have a Chinese given name?
	Sywé:	Wǒ fùchin yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz.	My father has a Chinese given name.
	Syān:	Nǐ mǔchin yě yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz ma?	Does your mother also have a Chinese given name?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mǔchin yě yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz.	My mother also has a Chinese given name.
	Syān:	Nǐ gēge, dìdi yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz méiyǒu?	Do your elder and younger brothers have Chinese given names?
	Sywé:	Wǒ gēge, dìdi méiyǒu Jūnggwo míngdz.	My elder and younger brothers don't have Chinese given names.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyějye, mèimei yě méiyǒu Jūnggwo míngdz ma?	Don't your elder and younger sisters have Chinese given names either?

	Sywé:	Wǒ jyějye, mèimei yě méiyǒu Jūnggwo míngdz.	My elder and younger sisters don't have Chinese given names either.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ mǔchin ài chànggēr ma?	Does your mother like to sing?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mǔchin ài chànggēr.	My mother likes to sing.
	Syān:	Nǐ fùchin yě ài chànggēr ma?	Does your father also like to sing?
	Sywé:	Wǒ fùchin yě ài chànggēr.	My father also likes to sing.
	Syān:	Tā gēge, dìdi ài búài chànggēr?	Do his elder and younger brothers like to sing?
	Sywé:	Tā gēge, dìdi búài chànggēr.	His elder and younger brothers don't like to sing.
	Syān:	Tā jyějye, mèimei yě búài chànggēr ma?	Don't his elder and younger sisters like to sing too?
	Sywé:	Tā jyějye, mèimei yě búài chànggēr.	His elder and younger sisters also don't like to sing.
4.	Syān:	Nèigé dūngsyi jyàu mén ma?	Is that (thing) called a door?
	Sywé:	Jèigé dūngsyi bújyàu mén.	That (thing) isn't called a door.
	Syān:	Nèigé dūngsyi jyàu mén ma?	Is that called a door?
	Sywé:	Jèigé dūngsyi yě bújyàu mén.	This isn't called a door either.
	Syān:	Nèi lyǎngge dūngsyi jyàu shémma?	What are those two things called?
	Sywé:	Jèigé jyàu chyán, nèigé jyàu bǐ.	This is called money, and that is called a pen.

	Syān:	Jèige dūngsyi jyàu gāngkwēi ma?	Is this called a helmet?
	Sywé:	Nèige dūngsyi bújyàu gāngkwēi.	That isn't called a helmet.
	Syān:	Jèige dūngsyi jyàu gāngkwēi ma?	Is this called a helmet?
	Sywé:	Nèige dūngsyi yě bújyàu gāngkwēi.	That isn't called a helmet either.
	Syān:	Jèi lyǎngge dūngsyi jyàu shémma?	What are these two things called?
	Sywé:	Nèige dūngsyi jyàu màudz, nèige dūngsyi jyàu shǒuchyāng.	That is called a hat, and that is called a pistol.
5.	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà, R̀běn hwà nǐ dōu dǔng ma?	Do you understand both Chinese and Japanese?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà wǒ dǔng, kěshr R̀běn hwà wǒ bùdǔng.	I understand Chinese, but not Japanese.
	Syān:	Fàgwo hwà, Dégwo hwà nǐ dōu dǔng ma?	Do you understand both French and German?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo hwà wǒ dǔng, kěshr Dégwo hwà wǒ bùdǔng.	I understand French, but not German.
6.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā yǒu jǐgè rén?	How many people are there in your family?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā yǒu chígè rén.	There are seven people in my family.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?	What folks do you have in your family?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu fùchin, mǔchin, gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei.	I have father, mother, elder brother, younger brother, elder sister and younger sister.

7.	Syān:	Nǐ dìdi yàu mǎi shémma dūngsyi?	What are the things your younger brother wants to buy?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dìdi yàu mǎi lǐngdài.	My younger brother wants to buy neckties.
	Syān:	Nǐ gēge yě yàu mǎi lǐngdài ma?	Does your elder brother also want to buy neckties?
	Sywé:	Wǒ gēge yě yàu mǎi lǐngdài.	My elder brother also wants to buy neckties.
	Syān:	Nǐ mèimei yàu búyàu mǎi chènshān?	Does your younger sister want to buy shirts?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mèimei búyàu mǎi chènshān.	My younger sister doesn't want to buy shirts.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyějye yě búyàu mǎi chènshān ma?	Doesn't your elder sister want to buy shirts either?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyějye yě búyàu mǎi chènshān.	My elder sister doesn't want to buy shirts either.
8.	Syān:	Shàngwèi shr̀ búshr̀ jyūngwān?	Is a captain an officer or not?
	Sywé:	Shàngwèi shr̀ jyūngwān.	A captain is an officer.
	Syān:	Jūngwèi, shàuwèi yě dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?	Are first and second lieutenants also officers?
	Sywé:	Jūngwèi, shàuwèi yě dōu shr̀ jyūngwān.	First and second lieutenants are also officers.
	Syān:	Shàngshr̀ shr̀ jyūngwān búshr̀?	Is a sergeant first class an officer or not?
	Sywé:	Shàngshr̀ búshr̀ jyūngwān.	A sergeant first class isn't an officer.

	Syān:	Jūngshr̀, syàshr̀ yě dōu búshr jyūngwān ma?	Sergeants and corporals aren't officers either, are they?
	Sywé:	Jūngshr̀, syàshr̀ yě dōu búshr jyūngwān.	Sergeants and corporals aren't officers either.
9.	Syān:	Tā mǔchin syǐhwan chàng R̀běn gēr ma?	Does his mother like to sing Japanese songs?
	Sywé:	Tā mǔchin syǐhwan chàng R̀běn gēr.	His mother likes to sing Japanese songs.
	Syān:	Tā mǔchin yě syǐhwan chàng Dégwo gēr ma?	Does his mother also like to sing German songs?
	Sywé:	Tā mǔchin yě syǐhwan chàng Dégwo gēr.	His mother also likes to sing German songs.
	Syān:	Tā fùchin syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan chàng R̀běn gēr?	Does his father like to sing Japanese songs.
	Sywé:	Tā fùchin syǐhwan chàng R̀běn gēr, kěshr bùsyǐhwan chàng Dégwo gēr.	His father likes to sing Japanese songs but not German songs.
10.	Syān:	Nǐ gēge syǐhwan chàng Jūnggwo gēr ma?	Does your elder brother like to sing Chinese songs?
	Sywé:	Wǒ gēge syǐhwan chàng Jūnggwo gēr.	My elder brother likes to sing Chinese songs.
	Syān:	Nǐ gēge yě syǐhwan syě Jūnggwo gēr ma?	Does your elder brother also like to write Chinese songs?
	Sywé:	Wǒ gēge yě syǐhwan syě Jūnggwo gēr.	My elder brother also likes to write Chinese songs.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyějye syǐhwan chàng Jūnggwo gēr bùsyǐhwan?	Does your elder sister like to sing Chinese songs or not?

	Sywé:	Wǒ jyějye syǐhwan chàng Jūnggwo gēr, kěshr bùsyǐhwan syě Jūnggwo gēr.	My elder sister likes to sing Chinese songs, but doesn't like to write Chinese songs.
11.	Syān:	Nǐ péngyoude dìdi dǔng bùdǔng R̀běn hwà?	Does your friend's younger brother understand Japanese?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyoude dìdi bùdǔng R̀běn hwà.	My friend's younger brother doesn't understand Japanese.
	Syān:	Nǐ péngyoude dìdi dǔng Fàgwo hwà bùdǔng?	Does your friend's younger brother understand French?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyoude dìdi yě bùdǔng Fàgwo hwà.	My friend's younger brother also doesn't understand French.
	Syān:	Jèibān sywésheng dōu dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do the students of this class understand a little Chinese?
	Sywé:	Jèibān sywésheng dōu dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	The students of this class all understand a little Chinese.
	Syān:	Nèibān sywésheng yě dōu dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do the students of that class all understand a little Chinese too?
	Sywé:	Nèibān sywésheng yě dōu dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	The students of that class all understand a little Chinese too.
12.	Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou jyā yǒu jǐge rén?	How many persons are there in your girl friend's family?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou jyā yǒu wǔge rén: tā fùchin, mǔchin, yígè gēge, yígè mèimei.	There are her father, mother, an elder brother, and a younger sister, five persons, in my girl friend's family.

L. 8

Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou syìng shémma?	What is the surname of your gir friend?
Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou syìng Bái.	My girl friend's surname is Bái.
Syān:	Tā gēgede míngdz jyàu shémma?	What is her elder brother's given name?
Sywé:	Tā gēgede míngdz jyàu Dàwèi.	Her elder brother's given name is David.
Syān:	Nǐ jyā yě yǒu wǔge rén ma?	Are there five persons in your family too?
Sywé:	Wǒ jyā yě yǒu wǔge rén.	There are also five persons in my family.
Syān:	Nǐ yě yǒu yígè gēge, yígè mèimei ma?	Do you also have an elder brother and a younger sister?
Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu yígè gēge, yígè jyějye, kěshr wǒ méiyou mèimei.	I have an elder brother and an elder sister, but I don't have a younger sister.
Syān:	Nǐ gēgede míngdz yě jyàu Dàwèi ma?	Is your elder brother's given name also David?
Sywé:	Wǒ gēgede míngdz yě jyàu Dàwèi.	My elder brother's given name is also David.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.	yīng	yíng	yǐng	yìng	chīn,	chīng	chīng,	chīn
	līng	líng	lǐng	lìng	mín,	míng	míng,	mín
	kū	kú	kǔ	kù	dǔ,	tǔ	tǔ,	dǔ
	hūng	húng	hǔng	hùng	kùng,	gùng	gùng,	kùng
	yūng	yúng	yǔng	yùng				
	wū	wú	wǔ	wù				

2.	yǒu gēge	méi gége
	yǒu míngdz	méi míngdz
	yǒu mǔchin	méi mǔchin
	yǒu fùchin	méi fùchin
	shéide dūngsyi	tāde dūngsyi
	shéide péngyou	tāde péngyou
	shéide jyějye	tāde jyějye
	shéide mèimei	tāde mèimei
	shéi yàu yān	nǐ yàu yān
	shéi yàu táng	nǐ yàu táng
	shéi yàu jř	wǒ yàu jř
	shéi yàu fàn	wǒ yàu fàn

3. Nín jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?	Yǒu wǒ fùchin, mǔchin, gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei, wǒ tàitai.
Nín gēge méiyǒu tàitai ma?	Wǒ gēge méiyǒu tàitai.
Nín dìdi méiyǒu tàitai ma?	Wǒ dìdi méiyǒu tàitai.

L. 8

Nín méiyǒu háidz ma?	Wǒ méiyǒu háidz.
Nín dìdi syǐhwan dzwò shémma?	Tā syǐhwan chàngger.
Nín gēge ài dzwò shémma?	Tā ài syědz.
Nín jyějye syǐhwan dzwò shémma?	Tā syǐhwan dzwòfan.
Tā syǐhwan dzwò shémma fàn?	Tā syǐhwan dzwò Jūnggwo fàn.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) I have a father, a mother, one elder brother, and one younger sister.

2) My father wants to buy a Chinese house.

3) My mother can prepare Chinese and American food.

4) My younger sister likes to sing. She loves French songs.

5) My elder brother has a Chinese girl friend. Her family name is Jàu.

6) We all have Chinese names and American names.

7) My father likes to buy Chinese things.

8) My younger sister can not write Chinese characters, but she understands Chinese.

9) She wants to learn to write.

10) We all read Chinese books and Chinese newspapers.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?

2) Nǐ yǒu fùchin mǔchin ma?

3) Nǐ yǒu gēge dìdi ma?

4) Nǐ yǒu jyějye mèimei ma?

5) Nǐ fùchin mǔchin hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?

6) Nǐ gēge dìdi dǔng Dégwo hwà ma?

7) Nǐ jyějye mèimei hwèi chàng Fàgwo gēr ma?

8) Nǐ syìng shémma? Nǐ jyàu shémma?

9) Nǐ yǒu Jūnggwo míngdz ma? Nǐde Jūnggwo míngdz jyàu shémma?

10) Nǐ syǐhwan mǎi Dégwo dūngsyi ma?

11) Dégwo dūngsyi hǎu bùhǎu?

12) Nǐ syǐhwan mǎi R̀běn dūngsyi ma?

13) R̀běn dūngsyi hǎu bùhǎu?

14) Jūnggwo hwà nǐ dǔng ma?

15) Jūnggwo bàu nǐ hwèi kàn ma?

16) Bái Shàngwèi hwèi chàng Fàgwo gēr búhwèi?

17) Jāng Jūngshr̀de gēge yě syìng Jāng ma?

18) Lǐ Syàshr̀de jyějye yě syìng Lǐ ma?

19) Nǐde mìngdz jyàu Dàwèi ma?

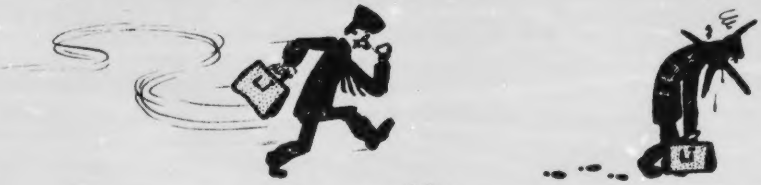
20) Nèi shr̀ nǐ fùchinde dūngsyi ma?

LESSON 9

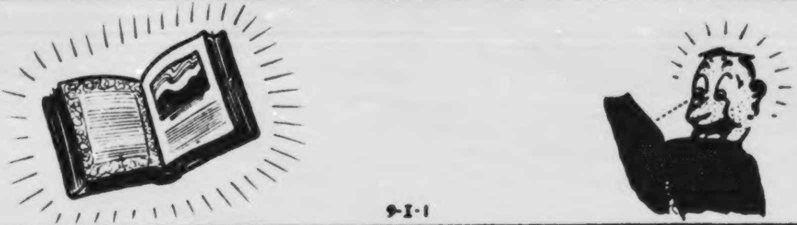
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ máng ma?	Is SFC Lǐ busy?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ máng.	SFC Lǐ is busy.
	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ lèi búlèi?	Is SFC Lǐ tired?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ búlei.	SFC Lǐ isn't tired.
	Syān:	Tā nèiběn shū hǎu bùhǎu?	Is that book of his good?
	Sywé:	Tā nèiběn shū hěn hǎu.	That book of his is quite good.
	Syān:	Tā nèiběn shū yě yǒuyìsz ma?	Is that book of his also interesting?
	Sywé:	Tā nèiběn shū yě yǒuyìsz.	That book of his is also interesting.
	Syān:	Nèigè nyǔháidz hǎukàn ma?	Is that girl pretty?
	Sywé:	Nèigè nyǔháidz hěn hǎukàn.	That girl is very pretty.
	Syān:	Nèigè nyǔháidz yě hěn tsūngmíng ma?	Is that girl also very intelligent?
	Sywé:	Nèigè nyǔháidz bùhěn tsūngmíng.	That girl isn't very intelligent.
2.	Syān:	Jèi lyǎnggè jwōdz, něigè dà?	Of these two tables, which is bigger?
	Sywé:	Jèi lyǎnggè jwōdz, nèigè dà.	Of these two tables, that one is bigger.
	Syān:	Něigè jwōdz syǎu?	Which table is smaller?
	Sywé:	Nèigè jwōdz syǎu.	That table is smaller.
3.	Syān:	Jūnggwo dūngsyi hěn gwèi ma?	Are Chinese things very expensive?

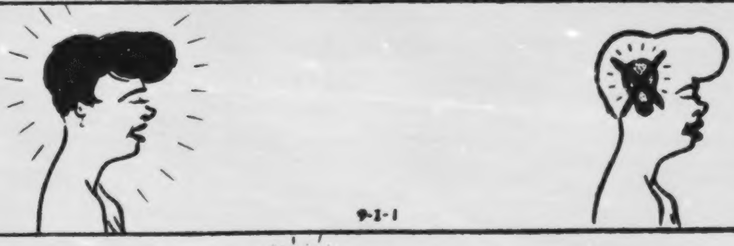
LESSON 9



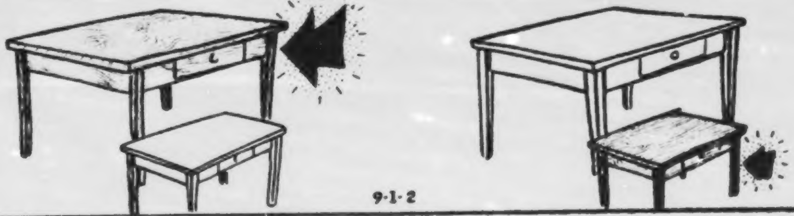
9-I-1



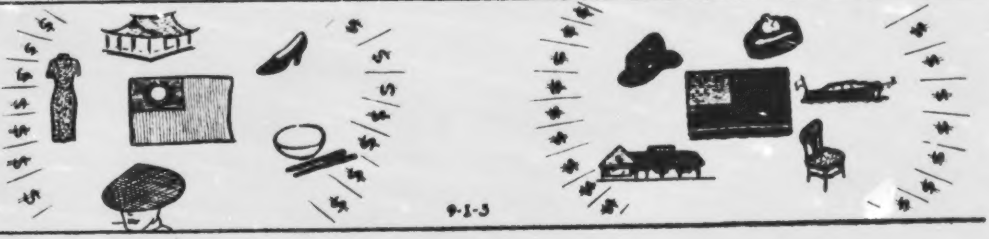
9-I-1



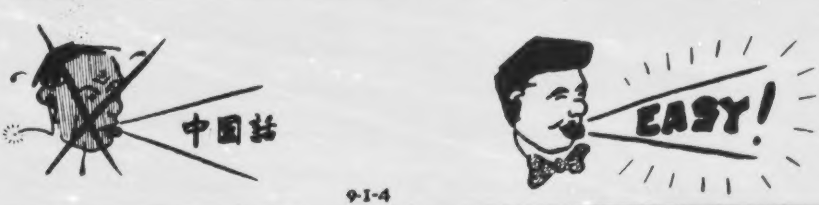
9-I-1



9-I-2



9-I-3



9-I-4

KS

Sywé:	Jūnggwo dūngsyi hěn gwèi.	Chinese things are very expensive.
Syān:	Měigwo dūngsyi yě hěn gwèi ma?	Are American things also very expensive?
Sywé:	Měigwo dūngsyi yě hěn gwèi.	American things are also very expensive.
Syān:	Jūnggwo dūngsyi gēn Měigwo dūngsyi dōu hěn gwèi ma?	Are both Chinese things and American things very expensive?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo dūngsyi gēn Měigwo dūngsyi dōu hěn gwèi.	Both Chinese things and American things are very expensive.

4. Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà nán bùnán?	Is the Chinese language difficult?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà bùhěn nán.	The Chinese language isn't very difficult.
Syān:	Měigwo hwà rúngyi bùrúngyi?	Is the American language easy?
Sywé:	Měigwo hwà hěn rúngyi.	The American language is very easy.

Syān:	Jèiběn shū gēn nèiběn shū dōu yǒuyìsz ma?	Are both this book and that book interesting?
Sywé:	Jèiběn shū yǒuyìsz, kěshr̀ nèiběn shū méiyìsz.	This book is interesting, but that book isn't.
Syān:	R̀běn dūngsyi gēn Měigwo dūngsyi dōu hěn pyányi ma?	Are both Japanese and American things very cheap?
Sywé:	R̀běn dūngsyi hěn pyányi, kěshr̀ Měigwo dūngsyi hěn gwèi.	Japanese things are very cheap, but American things are very expensive.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Bái Shàngwèi, nǐ hǎu ma?	How are you, Capt. Bái?
	Sywé:	Hǎu, syèsye.	Fine, thank you.
	Syān:	Nǐ máng bùmáng?	Are you busy?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùhěn máng.	I am not very busy.
	Syān:	Nǐ sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do you learn to speak Chinese?
	Sywé:	Wǒ sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	I learn to speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà rúngyi ma?	Is Chinese easy?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà hěn rúngyi.	Chinese is very easy.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě sywé syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?	Do you also learn to write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yě sywé syě Jūnggwo dz̀.	I also learn to write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Syě Jūnggwo dz̀ hěn nán ma?	Is it very difficult to write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Syě Jūnggwo dz̀ hěn nán.	It is very difficult to write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shémma shū?	What kind of book is that?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ yìběn Jūnggwo shū.	That is a Chinese book.
	Syān:	Nèiběn shū yǒuyìsz méiyǒu?	Is that book interesting?
	Sywé:	Nèiběn shū méiyìsz.	That book is dull.
	Syān:	Nǐ bùsyǐhwan kàn ma?	Don't you like to read it?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùsyǐhwan kàn.	I don't like to read it.

2.	Syān:	Nǐ yǒu jǐge háidz?	How many children do you have?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yǒu lyǎngge háidz.	I have two children.
	Syān:	Dōu shr̀ nyǔháidz ma?	Are they both girls?
	Sywé:	Dōu shr̀ nyǔháidz.	They are both girls.
	Syān:	Tāmen dōu hěn gāu ma?	Are they both tall?
	Sywé:	Yígė hěn gāu, yígė bùhěn gāu.	One is very tall, but the other isn't.
	Syān:	Něige nyǔháidz hǎukàn?	Which girl is pretty?
	Sywé:	Lyǎngge dōu hěn hǎukàn.	Both are very pretty.
	Syān:	Tāmen yě dōu hěn tsūngming ma?	Are both also very intelligent?
	Sywé:	Tāmen yě dōu hěn tsūngming.	Both are also very intelligent.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ gēn nǐ tàitai dōu syǐhwan mǎi dūngsyi ma?	Do both you and your wife like to go shopping?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai hěn syǐhwan mǎi dūngsyi.	My wife likes very much to go shopping.
	Syān:	Tā syǐhwan mǎi shémma dūngsyi?	What are the things she likes to buy?
	Sywé:	Tā syǐhwan mǎi Měigwo dūngsyi, yé syǐhwan mǎi Jūnggwo dūngsyi.	She likes to buy American things and also Chinese things.
	Syān:	Měigwo dūngsyi gēn Jūnggwo dūngsyi, něige gwèi, něige pyányi?	Comparing American things, and Chinese things, which are more expensive?
	Sywé:	Měigwo dūngsyi gēn Jūnggwo dūngsyi dōu bùpyányi.	Neither American things nor Chinese things are cheap.
	Syān:	Měigwo dūngsyi gēn Jūnggwo dūngsyi, něige hǎu?	Comparing American things and Chinese things, which are better?
	Sywé:	Měigwo dūngsyi hǎu.	American things are better.

4. Vocabulary

138.	dà	SV:	be big
139.	gāu	SV:	be tall; high
140.	gēn	CV:	and, with
141.	gwèi	SV:	be expensive
142.	hǎukan	SV:	be good looking
143.	hěn	A:	very, quite
144.	lèi	SV:	be tired
145.	máng	SV:	be busy
146.	méiyìsz	SV:	be dull
147.	nán	SV:	be difficult
148.	pyányi	SV:	be inexpensive
149.	rúngyi	SV:	be easy
150.	syǎu	SV:	be small
151.	tsūngming	SV:	be intelligent
152.	yǒuyìsz	SV:	be interesting

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Modified Nouns Understood

When the context is clear in meaning, a modified noun may be omitted leaving only the modifier in the sentence.

Nèi lyòuge rén dōu yǒu chyán ma?	Do all six of those people have money?
Sāngè yǒu chyán, sāngè méiyǒu chyán. (rén is omitted after sānge.)	Three of them have money, but three don't.
Nǐ yǒu dwōshau chyán?	How much money do you have?
Wǒ yǒu yìdyǎr. (chyán is omitted after yìdyǎr.)	I have a little.

Translate the following:

1) Can you speak Chinese? Yes, I can speak a little.

2) Do you have money? Yes, I do. Please give him a little.

3) Whose pen is this? It is mine.

4) How many Chinese friends do you have? I have three.

5) Do you have five dollars? Yes, I do.

2. Sentence Topics

A noun phrase or a verb-object phrase may be used as a topic of a sentence. It stands at the beginning of the sentence, and is followed by a further statement.

Nèi lyòugè rén: sānge yǒu chyán; sānge méiyǒu.	Three of those six people have money and three don't.

Jèi bágė jwōdz: wǔge shr̀ wǒde; sāngè shr̀ tāde.	Five of these eight tables are mine and three are his.
Nèi sz̀gė háidz: sāngė chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn; yígė chr̄ Měigwo fàn.	Three of those four children eat Chinese food and one eats American food.
Syě Jūnggwo dz̀ hěn nán.	It is difficult to write Chinese characters.
Shwō Jūnggwo hwà bùhěn nán.	It isn't very difficult to speak Chinese.
Yǒu chyán hěn hǎu.	It is wonderful to have money.
Mǎi Jūnggwo hwàr bùhěn rúngyi.	It isn't very easy to buy Chinese paintings.
Chr̄fàn hěn rúngyi, dzwòfàn hěn nán.	To eat is easy, to cook is difficult.

Translate the following:

1) Of these nine girls, six are busy and three aren't.

2) Of these ten chairs, four belong to Mr. Lǐ and six belong to Mr. Jāng.

3) Of those five Chinese books, two are very difficult and three are very easy.

4) Of these seven tables, I like these three, but not those four.

5) To read a Chinese book is very difficult.

6) To buy German things is very easy.

7) Singing American songs is very interesting.

8) It is very difficult to buy a German rifle.

. Comparative Degree of Stative Verb in Comparison

There is no difference in form between the Chinese stative verbs in positive degree and comparative degree when they are in comparison.

Jèigé jwōdz dà.	This table is big.
Jèi lyǎnggé jwōdz, něige dà?	Comparing these two tables, which one is bigger?

The comparison of Chinese sentence structure will be discussed in a later lesson.

4. Equivalent for "Yes" or "No"

There is no literal equivalent for "yes" or "no" in Chinese; therefore, in answering a question, just by repeating the verb of the question in its positive or negative form.

Q:	Nǐ yǒu bǐ ma?	Do you have a pen?
A:	Yǒu.	Yes.
Q:	Tā shr̀ búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén?	Is he a Chinese?
A:	Búshr̀, tā búshr̀ Jūnggwo rén.	No, he isn't a Chinese.
Q:	Jèige jwōdz hěn dà ma?	Is this table very big?
A:	Bù hěn dà.	No.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Mĕigwo rén gāu ma?	Are Americans tall?
	Sywé:	Mĕigwo rén gāu.	Americans are tall.
	Syān:	R̀bĕn rén bùgāu ma?	Aren't Japanese tall?
	Sywé:	R̀bĕn rén bùgāu.	Japanese aren't tall.
	Syān:	Nánrénde byău dà búdà?	Is a man's watch big?
	Sywé:	Nánrénde byău dà.	A man's watch is big.
	Syān:	Nyŭrénde byău syău bùsyău?	Is a lady's watch small?
	Sywé:	Nyŭrénde byău hĕn syău.	A lady's watch is very small.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo shū hĕn yŏuyìsz ma?	Are Chinese books very interesting?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo shū hĕn yŏuyìsz.	Chinese books are very interesting.
	Syān:	Dégwo shū yŏuyìsz méiyìsz?	Are German books interesting?
	Sywé:	Dégwo shū méiyìsz.	German books are dull.
	Syān:	Mĕigwo bàu pyānyi bù pyányi?	Are American newspapers cheap?
	Sywé:	Mĕigwo bàu hĕn pyányi.	American newspapers are very cheap.
	Syān:	Fàgwo bàu yĕ hĕn pyányi ma?	Are French newspapers also very cheap?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo bàu yĕ hĕn pyányi.	French newspapers are also very cheap.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà hĕn nán ma?	Is the Chinese language very difficult?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà bùhĕn nán.	The Chinese language is not very difficult.

L. 9

Syān:	R̀bĕn hwà hĕn rúngyi ma?	Is the Japanese language very easy?
Sywé:	R̀bĕn hwà bùhĕn rúngyi.	The Japanese language isn't very easy.
Syān:	Jèi lyăngjāng hwàr, nĕijāng hău?	Which of these two pictures is better?
Sywé:	Nèijāng Jūnggwo hwàr hău.	That Chinese picture is better.
Syān:	Jèi lyăngjāng hwàr dōu hĕn gwèi ma?	Are both of these two pictures very expensive?
Sywé:	Nèijāng Jūnggwo hwàr hĕn gwèi, kĕshr nèijāng Mĕigwo hwàr bùhĕn gwèi.	That Chinese picture is very expensive, but that American picture isn't very expensive.
Syān:	Jàu Tàitai gēn Jàu Syáujye, shéi hăukàn?	Who is prettier, Mrs. Jàu or Miss Jàu?
Sywé:	Jàu Syáujye hăukàn.	Miss Jàu is prettier.
Syān:	Jàu Syáujye yĕ hĕn tsūngming ma?	Is Miss Jàu also very intelligent?
Sywé:	Jàu Syáujye hăukan, kĕshr bùhĕn tsūngming.	Miss Jàu is pretty, but not very intelligent.
Syān:	R̀bĕn bĭ gēn Mĕigwo bĭ, nĕige pyānyi, nĕige gwèi?	Between the Japanese and American pens which are cheaper and which are more expensive?
Sywé:	R̀bĕn bĭ pyányi, Mĕigwo bĭ gwèi.	Japanese pens are cheap; American pens are expensive.
Syān:	R̀bĕn dz̀ gēn Jūnggwo dz̀, nĕige nán syĕ, nĕige rúngyi syĕ?	Which is difficult to write and which is easy to write, Japanese characters or Chinese characters?
Sywé:	R̀bĕn dz̀ gēn Jūnggwo dz̀ dōu hĕn nán syĕ.	Both Japanese characters and Chinese characters are very difficult to write.

	Syān:	Wáng Shàngshr̀ gēn Lǐ Shàngshr̀ shéi máng shéi bùmáng?	Who is busy, who isn't busy, SFC Wáng or SFC Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Wáng Shàngshr̀ gēn Lǐ Shàngshr̀ dōu hěn máng.	Both SFC Wáng and SFC Lǐ are very busy.
	Syān:	Wáng Shàngshr̀ gēn Lǐ Shàngshr̀ shéi lèi, shéi búlei?	Who is tired, and who isn't tired, SFC Wáng or SFC Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Wáng Shàngshr̀ gēn Lǐ Shàngshr̀ dōu bùhěn lèi.	Neither SFC Wáng nor SFC Lǐ are very tired.
	Syān:	Jèiběn Jūnggwo shū gēn jèiběn Měigwo shū néiběn yǒuyìsz, néiběn méiyìsz?	Between this Chinese book and this American book, which is interesting and which is dull?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyāngběn shū dōu hěn yǒuyìsz.	Both of those books are very interesting.
	Syān:	Jèi lyángběn shū dōu pyányi ma?	Are both of these books cheap?
	Sywé:	Bùdōu pyányi. Nèiběn Jūnggwo shū pyányi, kěshr nèiběn Měigwo shū bùpyanyi.	Not both are cheap. That Chinese book is cheap, but that American book isn't cheap.
3.	Syān:	Wǒmen jèige fángdz hěn gāu ma?	Is this house of ours very tall?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen jèige fángdz bùhěn gāu, kěshr hěn dà.	This house of ours isn't very tall, but it is very big.
	Syān:	Tā nèige nyǔpéngyou hěn tsūngming ma?	Is that girl friend of his very intelligent?
	Sywé:	Tā nèige nyǔpéngyou hěn tsūngming, kěshr bùhǎukàn.	That girl friend of his is very intelligent but not pretty.
4.	Syān:	Wǒ jèi lyǎngjang hwàr, něijang hǎukàn?	Which of these two pictures of mine looks nice?

	Sywé:	Nǐ nèi lyǎngjang hwàr, nèijang Jūnggwo hwàr hǎukàn.	Among these two pictures of yours that Chinese picture looks nice.
	Syān:	Wǒ jèi sānge bǐ, něige pyányi?	Which of these three writing instruments of mine is cheaper?
	Sywé:	Nǐ nèi sānge bǐ, nèige chyānbǐ pyányi.	Among the three writing instruments of yours that pencil is cheaper.
	Syān:	Tāmen nèi lyǎngge chyāng, něige chyāng dà?	Which of those two guns of theirs is bigger?
	Sywé:	Tāmen nèi lyǎngge chyāng, nèige bùchyāng dà.	That rifle is the bigger one of those two guns of theirs.
5.	Syān:	Nǐmende lyánjǎng hǎu ma?	How is your Company Commander?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende lyánjǎng bùhěn hǎu. Tā hěn lèi.	Our Company Commander isn't very well. He is very tired.
	Syān:	Nǐmende bānjǎng yě hěn lèi ma?	Is your Squad Leader also very tired?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende bānjǎng yě hěn lèi.	Our Squad Leader is also very tired.
6.	Syān:	Jèi lyǎngge Měigwo bàu dōu hěn yǒuyìsz ma?	Are both of these two American newspapers very interesting?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎngge Měigwo bàu dōu hěn méiyìsz.	Both of these two American newspapers are very dull.
	Syān:	Jèige Jūnggwo bàu yě méiyìsz ma?	Is this Chinese newspaper also dull?
	Sywé:	Nèige Jūnggwo bàu yě méiyìsz.	That Chinese newspaper is also dull.
	Syān:	Nǐde Jūnggwo hwà hěn hǎu ma?	Is your Chinese language very good?

	Sywé:	Wǒde Jūnggwo hwà bùhěn hǎu.	My Chinese language isn't very good.
	Syān:	Nǐde R̀běn hwà yě bùhěn hǎu ma?	Is your Japanese language not very good either?
	Sywé:	Wǒde R̀běn hwà yě bùhěn hǎu.	My Japanese language isn't very good either.
7.	Syān:	Jèi lyǎngge jwōdz gēn nèi lyǎngge jwōdz dōu hěn syǎu ma?	Are these two tables and those two tables all very small?
	Sywé:	Jèi lyǎngge jwōdz gēn nèi lyǎngge jwōdz dōu bùsyǎu.	These two tables and those two tables aren't small.
	Syān:	Nyǔháidzde màudz gēn nánháidzde màudz dōu hěn gwèi ma?	Are all girl's hats and boy's hats very expensive?
	Sywé:	Nyǔháidzde màudz gēn nánháidzde màudz dōu bùhěn gwèi.	Neither girl's hats nor boy's hats are very expensive.
	Syān:	Měigwo tàitai gēn Měigwo syáujye dōu hěn máng ma?	Are all American married ladies and misses very busy?
	Sywé:	Měigwo tàitai gēn Měigwo syáujye bùdōu hěn máng. Měigwo tàitai hěn máng, Měigwo syáujye bùmáng.	Not all American married ladies and misses are very busy. American married ladies are very busy, but American young ladies aren't.
8.	Syān:	Měigwo yān gēn Dégwo yān, shémma yān gwèi, shémma yān pyányi?	Comparing American cigarettes, which are more expensive and which are cheaper?
	Sywé:	Měigwo yān gwèi, Dégwo yān pyányi.	American cigarettes are expensive and German cigarettes cheap.
	Syān:	Nǐ mèimei gēn tā mèimei, shéi mèimei dà, shéi mèimei syǎu?	Comparing your younger sister and his younger sister, who is older and who is younger?

	Sywé:	Wǒ mèimei dà, tā mèimei syǎu.	My younger sister is older and his younger sister is younger.
9.	Syān:	Jèi lyòuběn shū; něi sānběn yǒuyìsz, něi sānběn méiyìsz?	Among these six books, which three are interresting and which three aren't?
	Sywé:	Jèi sānběn yǒuyìsz, nèi sānběn méiyìsz.	These three are interesting and those three are dull.
	Syān:	Nèi sānge rén; shéide màudz dà, shéide màudz syǎu?	Among these three people; whose hat is big and whose is small?
	Sywé:	Nèige nánrénde màudz dà, nèi lyǎnggè nyǔrénde màudz syǎu.	That man's hat is big, and those two ladies' hats are small.
	Syān:	Jèi sz̀jāng bàu; něi lyǎngjāng rúngyi kàn, něi lyǎngjāng bùrúngyi kàn?	Among these four sheets of newspaper; which two are easy and which two are difficult to read?
	Sywé:	Nèi lyǎngjāng Měigwo bàu rúngyi kàn, nèi lyǎngjāng Jūnggwo bàu bùrúngyi kàn.	Those two sheets of American newspaper are easy to read and those two Chinese newspapers are difficult to read.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. pyāu pyáu pyǎu pyàu chīn, chyān chyān, chīn
pāu páu pǎu pàu lán, lyán lyán, lán
nyān nyán nyǎn nyàn lǎn, lyǎn lyǎn, lǎn
pyān pyán pyǎn pyàn sàng, syàng syàng, sàng
lyāng lyáng lyǎng lyàng
syāng syáng syǎng syàng

2. tā hěn gāu shéi dōu gāu
tā hěn máng shéi dōu máng
tā hěn hǎu shéi dōu hǎu
tā hěn lèi shéi dōu lèi

nǐ hěn gāu wǒ hěn gāu
nǐ hěn máng wǒ hěn máng
nǐ hěn syǎu wǒ hěn syǎu
nǐ hěn dà wǒ hěn dà

nǐ bùgāu wǒ búlèi
nǐ bùmáng wǒ búdà
nǐ bùsyǎu jř búgwèi
nǐ búdà jř búdà

3.

Lǐ Shàngwèi máng ma?	Tā bùhěn máng, yě bùhěn lèi.
Wáng Syàshr̀ hěn gāu ma?	Wáng Syàshr̀ bùhěn gāu, kěshr hěn hǎukàn.
Jàu Shàuwèi hěn tsūngming ma?	Tā bùhěn tsūngming, kěshr̀ hěn hǎukàn.
Jèigè lǐngdài pyányi ma?	Hěn pyányi, kěshr bùhǎukàn.

L. 9

Nèigè chènshān gwèi búgwèi?	Búgwei, yě bùpyányi, kěshr hěn hǎukàn.
Sywé shwō Jūnggwo hwà nán ma?	Bùnán, yě bùrúngyi, kěshr hěn yǒuyìsz.
Lǐngdài gēn chènshān dōu hěn gwèi ma?	Chènshān búgwèi, lǐngdài gwèi.
Jèi lyǎngjāng jř, něijāng dà?	Jèijāng dà.
Nèi lyǎngge jwōdz, něige da?	Nèige dà, jèigè syǎu.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) This book is expensive but interesting.

2) Speaking Chinese is easy, but writing Chinese is difficult.

3) American things are good but not cheap.

4) That child is interesting and intelligent.

5) I speak a little Chinese.

6) Comparing these two children, which one is taller?

7) Three of the four Chinese books are interesting, but one is dull.

8) Men's watches are big; ladies' are small.

9) Chinese and Japanese characters both are difficult to write.

10) Are French hats expensive?

2. Conversation

1) Nĭmen dōu shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?

2) Nĭmen dōu syĕ Jūnggwo dz̀ ma?

3) Shwō Jūnggwo hwà hĕn nán ma?

4) Syĕ Jūnggwo dz̀ hĕn nán ma?

5) Nĭ yŏu Jūnggwo shū méiyŏu?

6) Nĭde Jūnggwo shū hĕn yŏuyìsz ma?

7) Nĭmen máng bùmáng?

8) Nĭmen lèi búlèi?

9) Jèi lyănggė jwōdz dōu hăukàn ma?

10) Jèi lyănggė jwōdz gwèi búgwèi?

11) Jèi lyăngbĕn shū, nĕibĕn dà?

12) Nèi lyǎngge rén, něige gāu?

13) Jèi lyǎngjāng hwàr, něijāng hǎukàn?

14) Nǐ syǐhwan Fàgwo màudz bù syǐhwan?

15) Fàgwo màudz rúngyi mǎi ma?

16) Syǎu byǎu, dà byǎu, dōu hǎukàn ma?

17) Syǎu byǎu, dà byǎu, dōu pyányi ma?

18) Jūnggwo bǐ rúngyi mǎi ma?

19) Jāng Jūngwèide nèiběn Měigwo shū yǒuyìsz méiyìsz?

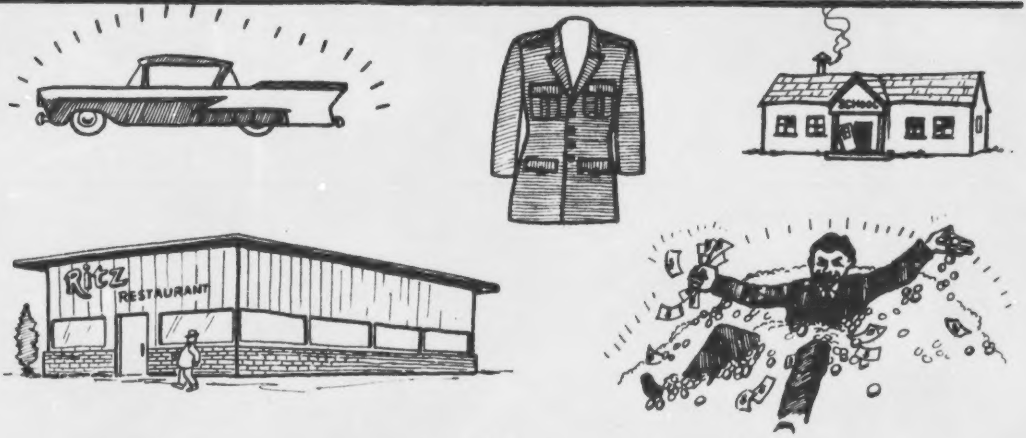
20) Jàu Shàuwèide nèiběn Dégwo shū yǒuyìsz méiyìsz?

LESSON 10

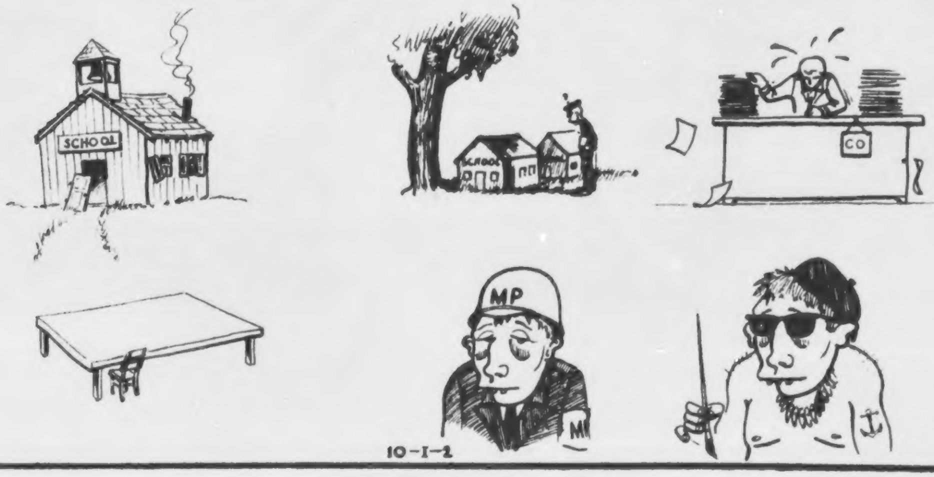
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèigė chìchē hǎukàn ma?	Is this car good-looking?
	Sywé:	Nèigė chìchē hǎukàn.	That car is good-looking.
	Syān:	Nèijyàn jyūnfú hěn jyòu ma?	Is that uniform very old?
	Sywé:	Nèijyàn jyūnfú bùhěn jyòu.	That uniform isn't very old.
	Syān:	Nèigė sywésyàu bútài hǎu ma?	That school isn't very good, is it?
	Sywé:	Nèigė sywésyàu bútài hǎu.	That school isn't very good.
	Syān:	Nèigė fàngwǎr hěn dà ma?	Is that restaurant very large?
	Sywé:	Nèigė fàngwǎr hěn dà yě hěn hǎukàn.	That restaurant is very large and looks nice.
	Syān:	Jàu Jūngwèide chyán dwō bùdwō?	Does First Lieutenant Jàu have a great deal of money?
	Sywé:	Jàu Jūngwèide chyán hěn dwō.	First Lieutenant Jàu has a great deal of money.
2.	Syān:	Nǐmende sywésyàu shr̀ yíge hěn lǎude sywésyàu ma?	Is your school a very old one?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende sywésyàu shr̀ yíge hěn lǎude sywésyàu.	Our school is a very old one.
	Syān:	Nǐmende sywésyàu yǒu hěn dàde fángdz ma?	Does your school have very large buildings?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende sywésyàu méiyǒu hěndàde fángdz.	Our school doesn't have very large buildings.
	Syān:	Nǐmende lyánjǎng dzwò hěn dwōde shr̀ching ma?	Does your company comander do very much work?

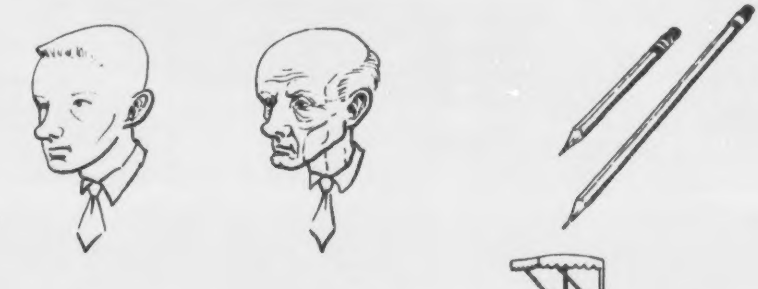
LESSON 10


SCHOOL
Ritz
RESTAURANT

10-I-1


SCHOOL
SCHOOL
CO
MP
MP

10-I-2



L. 10

Sywé:	Wǒmende lyánjǎng dzwò hěn dwōde shr̀ching.	Our company comander does very much work.
Syān:	Nǐ yǒu yigė cháng jwōdz ma?	Do you have a rectangular table?
Sywé:	Wǒ méiyǒu cháng jwōdz.	I don't have a rectangular table.
Syān:	Nèigè syànbīng shr̀ yige hěn tsūngmíngde rén ma?	Is that military policeman a very intelligent person?
Sywé:	Nèige syànbīng búshr̀ yige hěn tsūngmínde rén.	That military policeman isn't a very intelligent person.
Syān:	Tā shr̀ yige hěn yǒuyiszde rén ma?	Is he a very interesting person?
Sywé:	Tā shr̀ yigė hěn yǒuyiszde rén.	He is a very interesting person.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fàngwăr ma?	Is that a Chinese restaurant?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ Jūnggwo fàngwăr.	That is a Chinese restaurant.
	Syān:	Tāmende fàn dōu hăuchr̄ ma?	Is their food delicious?
	Sywé:	Tāmende Jūnggwo fàn hăuchr̄, mĕigwo fàn bútài hăuchr̄.	Their Chinese food is delicious, but their American food isn't very delicious.
	Syān:	Nèi shr̀ yíge syīn fàngwăr ma?	Is that a new restaurant?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ yíge syīn fàngwăr.	That is a new restaurant.
2.	Syān:	Nĭ nèijyàn jyūnfú hĕn hăukàn, shr̀ syīnde ma?	That uniform of yours is very good-looking. Is it new?
	Sywé:	Búshr̀ syīnde, jèi shr̀ yíjyàn jyòu jyūnfú.	It isn't new. This is an old uniform.
	Syān:	Nèigè hăukànde chìchē shr̀ nĭde ma?	Is that beautiful car yours?
	Sywé:	Nèigè hăukànde chìchē shr̀ wŏ dìdide, búshr wŏde.	That beautiful car is my younger brother's. It is not mine.
	Syān:	Nĭ méiyŏu chìchē ma?	Don't you have a car?
	Sywé:	Wŏ yŏu yíge hĕn jyòude chìchē.	I have a very old car.
3.	Syān:	Nĭmende sywésyàu shr̀ yíge hĕn dàde sywésyàu ma?	Is your school a very large school?
	Sywé:	Wŏmende sywésyàu bùsyău.	Our school isn't small.

	Syān:	Sywésheng dōu shr̀ nyánchīngde rén ma?	Are all the students young men?
	Sywé:	Sywésheng dōu shr̀ nyánchīngde rén.	All the students are young men.
	Syān:	Nǐmen yǒu hén lǎude sywésheng méiyǒu?	Do you have very old students?
	Sywé:	Yǒu, kěshr bùdwō.	Yes, but there aren't many.
	Syān:	Tsūngmingde sywésheng hěn dwō ma?	Are there very many intelligent students?
	Sywé:	Tsūngmingde sywésheng hěn dwō.	There are very many intelligent students.
4.	Syān:	Nèige hěn nyánchīng yé hěn gāude sywésheng shr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi ma?	Is that very young and very tall student Captain Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Búshr̀, nèi shr̀ Jāng Jūngshr̀.	No, that is Sergeant Jāng.
	Syān:	Něige shr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi?	Which is Captain Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Nèige bùhěn gāude sywésheng shr̀ Lǐ Shàngwèi.	That student of medium height is Captain Lǐ.
5.	Syān:	Nèige hěn hǎukànde háidz shr̀ nǐde háidz ma?	Is that very good-looking child yours?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ wǒde háidz.	That is my child.
	Syān:	Tā yě shr̀ yíge hěn tsūngmingde syǎuháidz ma?	Is he also a very intelligent little child?
	Sywé:	Tā yě shr̀ yíge hěn tsūngmingde syǎuháidz.	He is a very intelligent little child.

6. Vocabulary

153.	cháng	SV:	be long
154.	chē	N:	any wheeled vehicle
155.	chìchē	N:	automobile, car
156.	dwō	SV:	be much, many
157.	dzwòshr̀	V:	to work
158.	fàngwǎr	N:	restaurant
159.	hǎuchr̄	SV:	be good to eat
160.	jyàn	M:	(for clothing, affairs) piece, item
161.	jyòu	SV:	be old (not new)
162.	jyūnfú	N:	uniform
163.	lǎu	SV:	be old (in year)
164.	nyánchīng	SV:	be young
165.	shǎu	SV:	be little (in quantity), few
166.	shr̀(ching)	N:	work; affairs; undertaking
167.	syīn	SV:	be new
168.	sywésyàu	N:	school
169.	tài	A:	too

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Adjectival Function of Stative Verbs

Stative verbs may be used as adjectives to modify nouns. As adjectives, they sometimes take -de and sometimes don't.

1) Without -de

Simple unqualified stative verbs, in their adjectival function, seldom take -de. Through usage, some stative verbs have become attached to certain nouns, and the combinations function as individual words.

SV	N		SV	N	
syīn	màudz	new hat	dà	gwó	big country
jyòu	chìchē	old car	hǎu	rén	good man
lǎu	tàitai	old lady	lǎu	rén	old man
syǎu	byǎu	small watch			
dà	jwōdz	large table			

dàrén	adult	dàgē	eldest brother
syǎuháidz	child	dàjyě	eldest sister

2) With -de

When a stative verb is preceded by some qualifying element, -de is always added.

SV de -N	
hěn lǎude rén	very old man

bùhăude háidz	bad children
hăukànde jwōdz	nice looking table

Dwō and *shău* as Adjectives

These two words behave somewhat differently from other stative verbs. In their adjectival function, they seldom appear without an adverbial element, and again in their qualified form they may not take -*de*.

hĕn dwō rén	very many people (NEVER *dwō rén*, or *dwōde rén*).
hĕn shău fángdz	very few houses
bùshău chyán	a lot of money
bùshău dūngsyi	many things

Stative Verb Phrases

A few stative verbs such as *hău* (good), *nán* (difficult) and *rúngyi* (easy) may be combined with other verbs to form stative verb phrases. These phrases behave as stative verbs.

hăukàn	beautiful
hăusyĕ	easy to write
hăuchàng	easy to sing
hăuchr̄	delicious
nánnyàn	difficult to read
nánmài	hard to sell
rúngyimăi	easy to buy
rúngyimài	easy to sell
rúngyichàng	easy to sing

More stative verb phrases will be introduced in Lesson 14.

Translate the following:

1) New hats are very hard to buy.
2) A very new automobile is very easy to sell.
3) Small houses are very easy to buy.
4) A new song is hard to sing.
5) Chinese food is good to eat.
6) Chinese characters are hard to write.
7) Old books are hard to read.
8) Interesting books are easy to read.
9) Dull books are hard to read.

4. Special Measure jyàn

Jyàn is a special measure for shrching, dūngsyi, or jyūnjú.

jèijyàn shrching	this matter
nèi lyǎngjyàn dūngsyi	those two things
jèijyàn jyūnfú	this uniform

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Tā shr̀ nǐde lǎu péngyou ma?	Is he an old friend of yours?
	Sywé:	Tā búshr̀ wǒde lǎu péngyou.	He is not an old friend of mine.
	Syān:	Tā shr̀ yíge hǎu sywésheng ma?	Is he a good student?
	Sywé:	Tā shr̀ yíge hǎu sywésheng.	He is a good student.
	Syān:	Měigwo syáujye yàu mǎi jyòu chìchē ma?	Do American young ladies want to buy old cars?
	Sywé:	Měigwo syáujye búyàu mǎi jyòu chìchē.	American young ladies don't want to buy old cars.
	Syān:	Měigwo syáujye yàu mǎi syīn chìchē búyàu?	Do American young ladies want to buy new cars?
	Sywé:	Měigwo syáujye yàu mǎi syīn chìchē.	American young ladies want to buy new cars.
2.	Syān:	Nèijyàn shr̀ching yǒuyìsz ma?	Is that matter interesting?
	Sywé:	Nèijyàn shr̀ching yǒuyìsz.	That matter is interesting.
	Syān:	Nǐ ài dzwò yǒuyìszde shr̀ching ma?	Do you like to do interesting work?
	Sywé:	Wǒ ài dzwò yǒuyìszde shr̀ching.	I like to do interesting work.
	Syān:	Nǐ ài búài dzwò méiyìszde shr̀ching?	Do you like to do uninteresting work?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búài dzwò méiyìszde shr̀ching.	I don't like to do uninteresting work.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo fàn gēn Měigwo fàn dōu hǎuchr̄ ma?	Are both Chinese food and American food delicious?

	Sywé:	Jūnggwo fàn gēn Měigwo fàn dōu hǎuchr̄.	Both Chinese food and American food are delicious.
	Syān:	Nèigė jyūngwān syǐhwan chr̄ shémma fàn?	What kind of food does that officer like to eat?
	Sywé:	Nèigė jyūngwān syǐhwan chr̄ hǎuchr̄de fàn.	That officer likes to eat delicious food.
	Syān:	Nèigė jyūngwān syǐhwan něigė bīng?	Which soldier does that officer like?
	Sywé:	Nèigė jyūngwān syǐhwan nèigė nyánchīngde bīng.	That officer likes that young soldier.
3.	Syān:	Lǎu rén dōu yǒuchyán ma?	Are all old people rich?
	Sywé:	Lǎu rén bùdōu yǒuchyán.	Not all old people are rich.
	Syān:	Yǒuchyánde rén dōu yǒu chē ma?	Do all rich people have cars?
	Sywé:	Yǒuchyánde rén bùdōu yǒu chē.	Not all rich people have cars.
	Syān:	Nǐ nèige syīn péngyou ài dzwòshr̀ ma?	Does that new friend of yours like to work?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèigė syīn péngyou bútài ài dzwòshr̀.	That new friend of mine doesn't like to work very much.
	Syān:	Nyánchīngde syáujye yě bútài ài dzwòshr̀ ma?	Young ladies don't like to do too much work, do they?
	Sywé:	Nyánchīngde syáujye yě bútài ài dzwòshr̀.	Young ladies don't like to do too much work either.
4.	Syān:	Jèigė sywésyàude shù dwō bùdwō?	Does this school have many trees?
	Sywé:	Jèigė sywésyàude shù tài dwō.	This school has too many trees.

	Syān:	Nèige shù shr̀ yíge hén lǎude shù ma?	Is that tree a very old one?
	Sywé:	Nèige shù shr̀ yíge hěn lǎude shù.	That tree is a very old one.
	Syān:	Měigwo bīngde chyán hěn shǎu ma?	American soldiers have too little money,do they?
	Sywé:	Měigwo bīngde chyán tài shǎu.	American soldiers have too little money.
	Syān:	Jyūngwānde chyán yě tài shǎu ma?	Officers also have too little money, do they?
	Sywé:	Jyūngwānde chyán bútài shǎu.	Officers have much money.
5.	Syān:	Něige jyūngwān yǒu hěn dwō jyūnfú?	Which officer has very many uniforms?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngwèi yǒu hěn dwō jyūnfú.	Captain Lǐ has very many uniforms.
	Syān:	Dwōshǎu jyūngwān yàu mǎi jyūnfú?	How many officers want to buy uniforms?
	Sywé:	Bùshǎu jyūngwān yǎu mǎi jyūnfú.	Quite a number of officers want to buy uniforms.
	Syān:	Něige fàngwǎr yǒu bùshǎu yǐdz?	Which restaurant has a lot of chairs?
	Sywé:	Nèige dà fàngwǎr yǒu bùshǎu yǐdz.	That big restaurant has a lot of chairs.
	Syān:	Dwōshǎu dà fàngwǎr yǒu chē?	How many big restaurants have cars?
	Sywé:	Hěn dwō dà fàngwǎr yǒu chē.	Very many big restaurants have cars.
6.	Syān:	Lǎu fángdz dōu hěn pyányi ma?	Are all old houses very cheap?
	Sywé:	Lǎu fángdz dōu hěn pyányi.	Old houses are all very cheap.

	Syān:	Tài lǎude fángdz ní syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan?	Do you like very old houses or not?
	Sywé:	Tài lǎude fángdz wǒ bùsyǐhwan.	I don't like very old houses.
	Syān:	Syīn jyūnfú dōu tài gwèi ma?	Are all new uniforms too expensive?
	Sywé:	Syīn jyūnfú dōu tài gwèi.	New uniforms are all too expensive.
	Syān:	Bútài syīnde jyūnfú yé hěn gwèi ma?	Are uniforms which are not very new also very expensive?
	Sywé:	Bútài syīnde jyūnfú bútài gwèi.	Uniforms which are not very new are not too expensive.
7.	Syān:	Tā hwèi syě dwōshau Jūnggwo dz̀?	How many Chinese characters can he write?
	Sywé:	Tā hwèi syě bùshǎude Jūnggwo dz̀.	He can write many Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo dz̀ hěn rúngyi syě ma?	Are Chinese characters very easy to write?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo dz̀ bútài rúngyi syě.	Chinese characters aren't too easy to write.
	Syān:	Tā dǔng hěn dwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Does he understand a great deal of Chinese?
	Sywé:	Tā dǔng hěn dwō Jūnggwo hwà.	He understands a great deal of Chinese.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo hwà nánsywé bùnánsywé?	Is Chinese difficult to learn?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo hwà bútài nánsywé.	Chinese isn't too difficult to learn.
8.	Syān:	Nyánchīngde rén syǐhwan jyòu dūngsyi ma?	Do young people like old things?

Sywé:	Nyánchīngde rén bútài syǐhwan jyòu dūngsyi.	Young people don't like old things too much.
Syān:	Nèige hǎukànde syáujye yě bútài syǐhwan jyòu dūngsyi ma?	That pretty young lady doesn't like old things too much either, does she?
Sywé:	Nèige hǎukànde syáujye yě bútài syǐhwan jyòu dūngsyi.	That pretty young lady also doesn't like old things too much.
Syān:	Nèige syǎu fàngwǎr pyányi bupyányi?	Is that small restaurant reasonable?
Sywé:	Nèige syǎu fàngwǎr bútài pyányi.	That small restaurant isn't very reasonable.
Syān:	Nèige syǎu fàngwǎr, nǐ tàitai syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan?	Does your wife like that small restaurant?
Sywé:	Nèige syǎu fàngwǎr wǒ tàitai bútai syǐhwan.	My wife doesn't like that small restaurant too much.
9. Syān:	Dwōshau Měigwo sywésheng syǐhwan dzwò dà shr̀?	How many American students like to achieve big things?
Sywé:	Bùshǎude Měigwo sywésheng syǐhwan dzwò dà shr̀.	Many American students like to achieve big things.
Syān:	Dwōshau Dégwo rén yǒu syīn chìchē?	How many German people have new cars?
Sywé:	Hén shǎude Dégwo rén yǒu syīn chìchē.	Very few German people have new cars.
Syān:	Dwǒshau Dégwo rén yàu mǎi pyányi chìchē?	How many German people want to buy cheap cars?
Sywé:	Hěn dwōde Dégwo rén yàu mǎi pyányi chìchē.	Very many German people want to buy cheap cars.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. yūn yún yǔn yùn — yūn, yūng — yūng, yūn
syūn syún syǔn syùn — chīng, cháng — cháng, chīng
chr̄ chŕ chř chr̀ — hěn, hǎn — hǎn, hěn
shr̄ shŕ shř shr̀ — yù, ywè — ywè, yù
ywē ywé ywě ywè
sywē sywé sywě sywè

2.

tā nyánchīng	tā hǎukàn
shéi nyánchīng	shéi hǎukàn
nǐ nyánchīng	nǐ hǎukàn
tài nyánchīng	tài hǎukàn
chìchē syīn	syīn chìchē
chìchē cháng	cháng chìchē
chìchē syǎu	syǎu chìchē
chìchē jyòu	jyòu chìchē
syīn sywésyàu	lǎu sywésyàu
nán sywésyàu	nyǔ sywésyàu
syǎu sywésyàu	dà sywésyàu
jyòu sywésyàu	syīn sywésyàu

3.

Nǐ mǎi syīn chìchē ma?	Bùmǎi, syīn chìchē tài gwèi.
Kěshr jyòu chìchē bùhǎukàn.	Jyòu chìchē pyányi.
Nǐ kàn wǒde syīn chìchē, hǎu bùhǎu?	Hěn hǎu. Nǐ yǒu chyán, nǐ mǎi syīn chìchē.
Nǐ méi chyán ma?	Wǒ méi chyán, wǒ bù mǎi syīn chìchē.

Nǐ yǒu jǐjyan jyūnfú?	Yǒu sānjyan.
Dōu shr̀ syīnde ma?	Yíjyan shr syīnde, lyǎngjyan shr jyòude.
Něige fàngwǎr mài Jūnggwo fàn?	Nèige Jūnggwo fàngwǎr mài Jūnggwo fàn.
Nǐmen sywésyaude sywésheng dōu hěn nyánchīng ma?	Bùdōu nyánchīng.
Nyánchīngde bīng dwō bùdwō?	Hěn dwō.
Nyánchīngde jyūngwān dwō bùdwō?	Bùhěn dwō.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) This small car is nice-looking but very expensive.
2) His uniform is new and nice-looking.
3) My car is too old; I want to buy a new one.
4) That lady is young and pretty. Whose wife is she?
5) Are all your students very busy?
6) The Chinese food is delicious and inexpensive.
7) This student is old and not very intelligent.
8) Captain Lǐ is young, tall and handsome.
9) This school is new, but has many students.
10) Among our students, old ones are many, young ones are few.

2. Conversation

1) Jèige sywésyàu yǒu méiyǒu nyǔ sywésheng?
2) Nyánchīngde sywésheng tsūngming bùtsūngming?
3) Nǐ yǒu chìchē ma?
4) Nǐde chìchē shr̀ syīnde búshr̀?
5) Nǐde chìchē dà búdà?
6) Shéide chìchē syīn?
7) Shéide chìchē gwèi?
8) Syīnde jyūnfú gwèi búgwèi?
9) Jyòude jyūnfú pyányi ma?
10) Hǎukànde nyánchīngde syáujye dwō bùdwō?
11) Nǐde shr̀ching dwō bùdwō? Nǐ máng bùmáng?
12) Syīnde chìchē dōu hěn cháng ma?

13) Jèige fàngwǎr syīn bùsyīn?

14) Nǐ syīn jyūnfú hǎukàn bùhǎukàn?

15) Nǐ fùchin hén lǎu ma?

16) Lǎu tàitai syǐhwan syǎuhaidz ma?

17) Měigwo gēr rúngyichàng ma?

18) Jūnggwo dūngsyi rúngyimǎi ma?

19) Nǐde jyūnfú dōu shr syīnde bûshr?

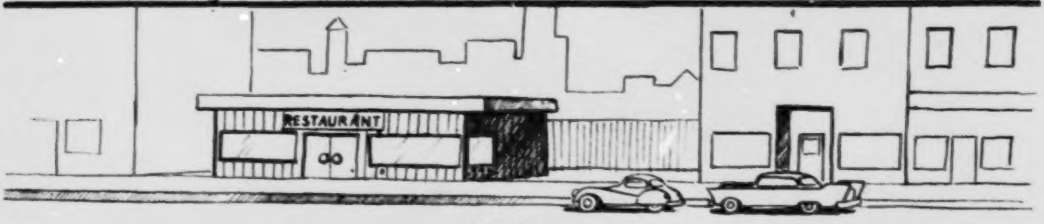
20) Nǐ hwèi shwō hěn dwō Jūnggwo hwà búhwèi?

LESSON 11

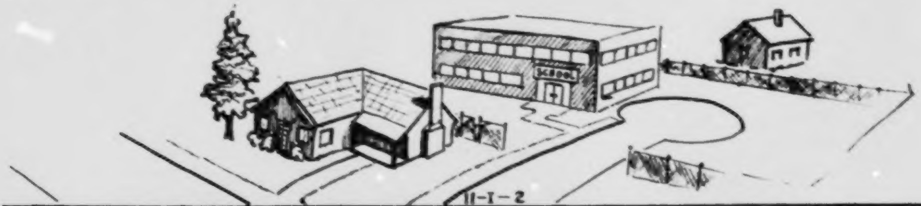
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèr yǒu fàngwǎr méiyǒu?	Is there a restaurant here or not?
	Sywé:	Jèr méiyǒu fàngwǎr.	There is no restaurant here.
	Syān:	Nèr yǒu fàngwǎr ma?	Is there a restaurant there?
	Sywé:	Nèr yě méiyǒu fàngwǎr.	There is no restaurant there either.
	Syān:	Nǎr yǒu fàngwǎr?	Where is there a restaurant?
	Sywé:	Jyēshang yǒu fàngwǎr.	There is a restaurant downtown.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dzài nǎr?	Where is your home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā dzài sywésyàu chyántou.	My home is in front of the school.
	Syān:	Tā jyā dzài nǎr?	Where is his home?
	Sywé:	Tā jyā dzài sywésyàu hòutou.	His home is behind the school.
3.	Syān:	Jwōdz shàngtou yǒu shémma?	What is on the table?
	Sywé:	Jwōdz shàngtou yǒu shū.	There are books on the table.
	Syān:	Jwōdz syàtou yǒu shémma?	What is under the table?
	Sywé:	Jwōdz syàtou yǒu yíge bǐ.	There is a pen under the table.
	Syān:	Hēibǎn shàngtou yǒu shémma?	What is on the blackboard?
	Sywé:	Hēibǎn shàngtou yǒu Jūnggwo dz̀.	There are Chinese characters on the blackboard.

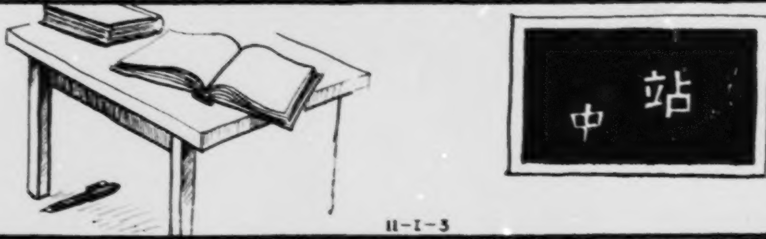
LESSON 10


RESTAURANT

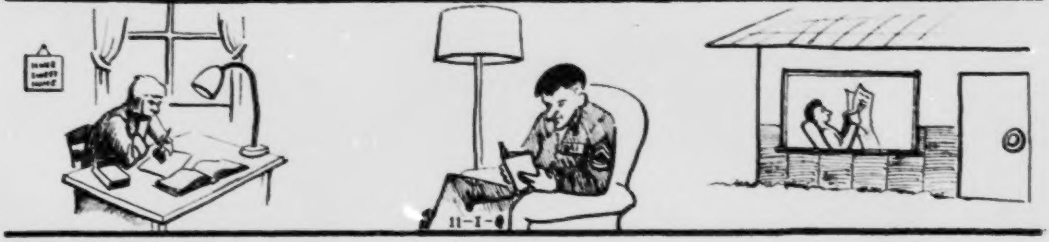
11-I-1



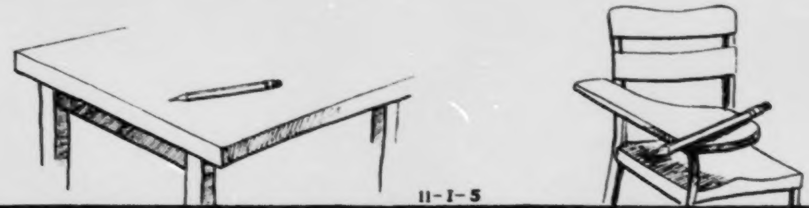
11-I-2



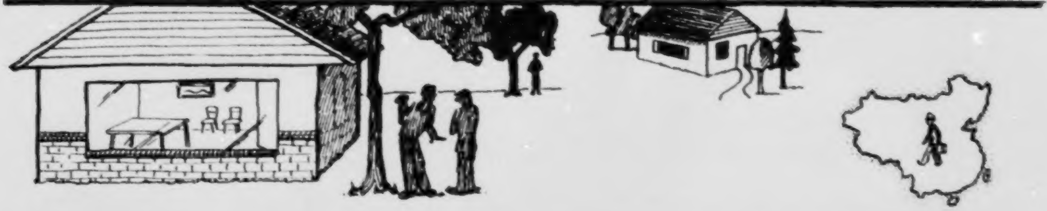
11-I-3


HOME SWEET HOME

11-I-4



11-I-5



4.	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān nyànshū ma?	Do you study everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān nyànshū.	I study everyday.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dzài jyā nyànshū ma?	Do you study at home everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dzài jyā nyànshū.	I study at home everyday.
	Syān:	Shéi dzài wūdz lǐtou ne?	Who is in the room?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàngshr̀ dzài wūdz lǐtou ne.	SFC Bái is in the room.
	Syān:	Tā dzài wūdz lǐtou dzwò shémma ne?	What is he doing in the room?
	Sywé:	Tā dzài wūdz lǐtou kànshū ne.	He is reading in the room.
	Syān:	Shéi dzài wūdz lǐtou kàn bàu ne?	Who is reading newspapers in the room?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyou dzài wūdz lǐtou kàn bàu ne.	My friend is reading newspapers in the room.
5.	Syān:	Wǒde chyānbǐ dzài nǎr ne?	Where is my pencil?
	Sywé:	Nǐde chyānbǐ dzài jwōdzshang ne.	Your pencil is on the table.
	Syān:	Jwōdzshangde chyānbǐ shr̀ wǒde ma?	Is the pencil on the table mine?
	Sywé:	Jwōdzshangde chyānbǐ shr̀ nǐde.	The pencil on the table is yours.
	Syān:	Yǐdzshangde chyānbǐ shr̀ shéide?	Whose pencil is that on the chair?
	Sywé:	Yǐdzshangde chyānbǐ shr̀ wǒde.	The pencil on the chair is mine.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nǐ dzài nǎr nyànshū?	Where do you study?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dzài jèige sywésyàu nyànshū.	I study at this school.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dzài nǎr?	Where is your home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā dzài sywésyàu chyántou.	My home is in front of the school.
	Syān:	Nǎr yǒu fàngwǎr?	Where can we find a restaurant?
	Sywé:	Sywésyàu hòutou yǒu yígè Jūnggwo fàngwǎr.	There is a Chinese restaurant behind the school.
	Syān:	Nǐ dzài nèige fàngwǎr chr̄fàn ma?	Do you eat at that restaurant?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búdzài nèige fàngwǎr chr̄fàn.	I don't eat at that restaurant.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dzài nǎr chr̄fàn?	Where do you eat every day?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dzài jyā chr̄fàn.	I eat at home every day.
2.	Syān:	Jèige wūdz lǐtou yǒu jǐge jwōdz, jǐge yǐdz?	How many tables and chairs are there in this room?
	Sywé:	Jèige wūdzli yǒu wǔge jwōdz, shŕge yǐdz.	There are five tables and ten chairs in this room.
	Syān:	Jèr yǒu jǐge Jūnggwo rén, jǐge Měigwo rén?	How many Chinese and Americans are here?
	Sywé:	Jèr yǒu yíge Jūnggwo rén, báge Měigwo rén.	There are one Chinese and eight Americans here.
	Syān:	Dōu shr̀ syānsheng ma?	Are they all teachers?
	Sywé:	Yígè shr̀ syānsheng, báge shr̀ sywésheng.	One is a teacher, and eight are students.

	Syān:	Dzài syānsheng hòutoude nèige dūngsyi shr̀ hēibǎn ma?	Is that thing behind the teacher a blackboard?
	Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ hēibǎn.	That is a blackboard.
	Syān:	Hēibǎnshàngde dz̀ shr̀ shémma dz̀?	What kind of writing is on the blackboard?
	Sywé:	Hēibǎnshàngde dz̀ shr̀ Jūnggwo dz̀.	The characters on the blackboard are Chinese characters.
3.	Syān:	Nǐde bǐ dzài nǎr ne?	Where is your pen?
	Sywé:	Wǒde bǐ dzài jwōdz syàtou ne.	My pen is under the table.
	Syān:	Jwōdz shàngtoude nèige byǎu shr̀ shéide?	Whose watch is that on the table?
	Sywé:	Jwōdz shàngtoude nèige byǎu shr̀ wǒde.	The watch on the table is mine.
	Syān:	Shéi dzài wàitou ne?	Who is outside?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syānsheng dzài wàitou ne.	Mr. Lǐ is outside.
	Syān:	Tā dzài wàitou dzwò shémma ne?	What is he doing outside?
	Sywé:	Tā dzài wàitou kàn bàu ne.	He is reading a newspaper outside.
4.	Syān:	Shéi dzài hēibǎnshang syědz̀ ne?	Who is writing on the blackboard?
	Sywé:	Jāng Syānsheng dzài hēibǎnshang syědz̀ ne.	Mr. Jāng is writing on the blackboard.
	Syān:	Tā dzài hēibǎnshang syě shémma dz̀ ne?	What is he writing on the blackboard?
	Sywé:	Tā dzài hēibǎnshang syě Jūnggwo dz̀ ne.	He is writing Chinese characters on the blackboard.

Syān:	Sywésheng dōu dzài nǎr ne?	Where are all the students?
Sywé:	Sywésheng dōu dzài wūdzli ne.	The students are all in the room.
Syān:	Tāmen dzài wūdzli dzwò shémma ne?	What are they doing in the room?
Sywé:	Tāmen yě dzài wūdzli syědž ne.	They are also writing in the room.

5. Vocabulary

170.	chyántou	N:	front
171.	dzài	V/CV:	be at, in, on/at, in, on
172.	hēibǎn	N:	blackboard
173.	hòutou	N:	back
174.	jèr	N:	here
175.	jyēshang	N:	downtown; on the street
176.	lǐtou	N:	inside
177.	nǎr	N:	where
178.	ne	P:	(sentence suffix indicating continuance of state or action)
179.	nèr	N:	there
180.	shàngtou	N:	above, top
181.	syàtou	N:	below, bottom
182.	tyāntyān	MA/N:	everyday
183.	wàitou	N:	outside
184.	wūdz	N:	room

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Place Words (PW)

Jèr, nèr, and nǎr are place words, and nǎr is also a question word.

Nǎr yǒu Jūnggwo rén?	Where are there Chinese?
Wǒde shū dzài jèr.	My books are here.

2. Positional Nouns

Lǐtou (inside), wàitou (outside), etc. are positional nouns. They may be used alone as place words or they may be used after certain nouns, and together they form place words. They may also be suffixed to certain nouns by dropping the syllable tou.

lǐtou	inside
wàitou	outside
chyántou	in front
hòutou	at the rear
shàngtou	on top
syàtou	at bottom, below
jwōdz lǐtou	in the table
fángdz wàitou	outside the house
yǐdz chyántou	in front of the chair
chìchē shàngtou	on top of the car
shù hòutou	behind the tree
shū syàtou	under the book

jwōdzshang	on the table
yǐdzshang	on the chair
wūdzli	in the room
fàngwǎrli	in the restaurant

Háidz dōu dzài wàitou ne.	Children are all outside.
Jèigè fàngwǎr chyántou yǒu dwōshau rén, hòutou yǒu dwōshau rén?	How many people are in front of this restaurant and how many behind?

3. Giving Location with dzài

There are two ways to use the word dzài: as a main verb and as a co-verb.

1) As a main verb:

It means "be at" or "is located at."

Nǐ dzài nǎr?	Where are you?
Wǒ dzài sywésyàu.	I am at school.
Wǒ búdzài jyā.	I am not at home.

2) As a co-verb:

A co-verb indicates a relationship between a noun and the main verb. It functions like an English preposition. The co-verb takes an object. It and its object form a co-verbial phrase which precedes the main verb and describes a setting for the action of the main verb.

Tā dzài Jūnggwo nyànshū.	He studies in China.
Wǒ dzài fàngwǎr chr̄fàn.	I eat in a restaurant.
Tā dzài jyā syědz̀.	He writes at home.

Translate the following:

1) Where is Miss Wáng?

2) She is at home. She isn't in the school.

3) Is Miss Wáng here?

4) She is here. She is in the room.

5) What is she doing in the room?

6) She is writing Chinese characters in the room.

7) How many Chinese characters are there on the blackboard?

8) There are five Chinese characters on the blackboard.

4. Names of Cities or Countries after dzài

Positional suffix lĭtou or lĭ never is used after dzài. We say dzài Mĕigwo but NEVER dzài Mĕigwo lĭtou or dzài Mĕigwoli.

Certain other particularized nouns after dzài sometimes drop the positional suffix li.

Wŏ tàitai búdzài jyā.	My wife is not at home.
Tā dzài sywésyàu ne.	She is at school.
Tā dzài nĕige sywésyau nyànshū ne?	At which school is she studying?

5. Modifying clauses

A modifier in Chinese takes the ending -de and stands before the noun it modifies. Therefore, -de is an indicator showing that the words before it are modifiers which modify the noun after -de.

wūdzlide rén	the people inside the room
hēibǎnshangde dz̀	the characters on the blackboard
yǐdz dǐsyade shū	the book under the chair

6. Time Words (TW)

Time words have two functions: nouns and moveable adverbs. As nouns they are used as subjects or objects, and as moveable adverbs they describe the time of the action of the main verb.

Tyāntyan tā dzai sywésyàu chr̄fàn.	He eats at school everyday.
Tā tyāntyan dzai sywésyàu chr̄fàn.	He eats at school everyday.

7. Continuance with *ne*

When it is desired to stress the fact that the action of the verb is going on at the moment of speaking, the particle *ne* is added to the end of the sentence.

Tā dzài jèr ne.	He is (still) here.
Tāmen chr̄fàn ne.	They are eating now.
Wǒmen chànggēr ne.	We are singing now.
Nǐ dzwò shémma ne?	What are you doing?
Wǒ syědz̀ ne.	I am writing.

Translate the following:

1) Those two friends of his eat Chinese food every day.

2) This boy is singing a song.

3) That boy is very clever. He sells papers everyday.

4) Miss Wáng is now preparing food.

5) Do you write Chinese characters everyday?

6) That old lady is reading a Chinese book.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jwōdz shàngtou yǒu bǐ ma?	Is there a pen on the table?
	Sywé:	Jwōdz shàngtou yǒu bǐ.	There is a pen on the table.
	Syān:	Jwōdz syàtou yǒu bǐ méiyǒu?	Is there a pen under the table?
	Sywé:	Jwōdz syàtou méiyǒu bǐ.	There isn't any pen under the table.
	Syān:	Wūdz lǐtou yǒu méiyǒu rén?	Are there people in the room?
	Sywé:	Wūdz lǐtou yǒu rén.	There are people in the room.
	Syān:	Wūdz wàitou yě yǒu rén ma?	Are there people outside the room?
	Sywé:	Wūdz wàitou méiyǒu rén.	There isn't anyone outside.
	Syān:	Fángdz chyántou yǒu shù méiyǒu?	Are there trees in front of the house?
	Sywé:	Fángdz chyántou yǒu shù.	There are trees in front of the house.
	Syān:	Fángdz hòutou yě yǒu shù ma?	Are there also trees behind the house?
	Sywé:	Fángdz hòutou yě yǒu shù.	There are also trees behind the house.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai dzài sywésyàu ma?	Is your wife at school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai búdzài sywésyàu.	My wife isn't at school.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai dzài jyā ma?	Is your wife at home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai dzài jyā.	My wife is at home.

	Syān:	Jūnggwo fàngwǎr dzài nǎr?	Where is the Chinese restaurant?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo fàngwǎr dzài jyēshang.	The restaurant is located downtown.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo fàngwǎr búdzài sywésyàu lǐtou ma?	Isn't the Chinese restaurant in the school?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo fàngwǎr búdzài sywésyàu lǐtou.	The Chinese restaurant isn't in the school.
	Syān:	Nǐ mǔchin dzài búdzài jèr?	Is your mother here?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mǔchin búdzài jèr.	My mother isn't here.
	Syān:	Nǐ mǔchin dzài nǎr ne?	Where is your mother?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mǔchin dzài Jūnggwo ne.	My mother is in China.
3.	Syān:	Hēibǎnshàngde hwàr shr̀ Měigwo hwàr ma?	Is the picture on the blackboard an American picture?
	Sywé:	Hēibǎnshàngde hwàr shr̀ Měigwo hwàr.	The picture on the blackboard is an American picture.
	Syān:	Bàu syàtoude hwàr shr̀ shémma hwàr?	What kind of picture is the one under the newspaper?
	Sywé:	Bàu syàtoude hwàr shr̀ Jūnggwo hwàr.	The picture under the newspaper is a Chinese picture.
	Syān:	Wǒde byǎu dzài nèiběn shū lǐtou ma?	Is my watch inside that book?
	Sywé:	Nǐde byǎu búdzài nèiběn shū lǐtou.	Your watch isn't inside that book.
	Syān:	Wǒde byǎu dzài búdzài nèiběn shū syàtou?	Is my watch under that book?
	Sywé:	Nǐde byǎu dzài nèiběn shū syàtou.	Your watch is under that book.

4.	Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou dzài nǎr ne?	Where is your girl friend?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou dzài jyēshang ne.	My girl friend is downtown.
	Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou dzài jyēshang dzwò shémma ne?	What is your girl friend doing downtown?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou dzài jyēshang mǎi dūngsyi ne.	My girl friend is shopping downtown.
	Syān:	Tā tyāntyān dzài jyēshang mǎi dūngsyi ma?	Does she shop downtown every day?
	Sywé:	Tā bùtyāntyān dzài jyēshang mǎi dūngsyi.	She doesn't shop downtown every day.
	Syān:	Nǐ háidz dzwò shémma ne?	What are your children doing?
	Sywé:	Wǒ háidz nyànshū ne.	My children are studying.
	Syān:	Nǐ háidz dzài nǎr nyànshū ne?	Where are your children studying?
	Sywé:	Wǒ háidz dzài tāmen sywésyàu nyànshū ne.	My children are studying at their school.
	Syān:	Nǐ háidz tyāntyān dzài tāmen sywésyàu nyànshū ma?	Do your children study at their school every day?
	Sywé:	Wǒ háidz tyāntyān dzài tāmen sywésyàu nyànshū.	My children study at their school every day.
5.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā dōu yǒu shémma rén?	Who comprises your family?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn lyǎnggè háidz.	My family consists of my wife and two children.
	Syān:	Nǐ nèi lyǎnggè háidz dōu yǒu shū ma?	Do both of your children have books?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nèi lyǎnggè háidz dōu yǒu shū.	Both of my children have books.

Syān:	Tāmen nèi lyǎngběn shūli dōu yǒu hwàr ma?	Are there pictures in those two books of theirs?
Sywé:	Tāmen nèi lyǎngběn shūli dōu yǒu hwàr.	There are pictures in those two books of theirs.
Syān:	Wǒmen sywésyàu yǒu méiyǒu Řběn bàu?	Are there Japanese newspapers at our school?
Sywé:	Wǒmen sywésyàu yǒu Řběn bàu.	There are Japanese newspapers at our school.
Syān:	Řběn bàushàng yǒu Jūnggwo dz̀ méiyǒu?	Are there Chinese words in the Japanese newspaper?
Sywé:	Řběn bàushàng dōu yǒu Jūnggwo dz̀.	There are Chinese words in the Japanese newspaper.
Syān:	Jūnggwo bàushàng yě yǒu Řběn dz̀ ma?	Are there Japanese words in Chinese newspapers too?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo bàushàng dōu méiyǒu Řběn dz̀.	There are no Japanese words at all in Chinese newspapers.
5. Syān:	Nǐde chìchē dzài sywésyàu wàitou ma?	Is your car outside the school?
Sywé:	Wǒde chìchē búdzai sywésyàu wàitou.	My car isn't outside the school.
Syān:	Nǐde chìchē dzài jèige fángdz chyántou ma?	Is your car in front of this house?
Sywé:	Wǒde chìchē yě búdzài jèige fángdz chyántou, dzài jèige fángdz hòutou.	My car isn't in front of this house either, but behind this house.
Syān:	Jèige fángdz chyántoude chìchē shr̀ shéide?	Whose car is in front of this house?
Sywé:	Jèige fángdz chyántoude chìchē shr̀ syānshengde.	The car in front of this house belongs to the teacher.

	Syān:	Wǒ jèiběn shū syàtou yǒu shémma dūngsyi?	What is there under this book of mine?
	Sywé:	Nǐ nèiběn shū syàtou méiyǒu dūngsyi.	There is nothing under that book of yours.
	Syān:	Wǒde chyán dzài búdzài jèiběn shū shàngtou?	Is my money on top of this book?
	Sywé:	Nǐde chyán dzài jèiběn shū shàngtou.	Your money is on top of this book.
	Syān:	Dzài jèiběn shū shàngtoude chyán shr̀ Měigwo chyán ma?	Is the money on top of this book American money?
	Sywé:	Dzài jèiběn shū shàngtoude chyán shr̀ Měigwo chyán.	The money on top of this book is American money.
7.	Syān:	Jèige wūdz lǐtoude sywésheng dōu dǔng Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do all the students in this room understand Chinese?
	Sywé:	Jèige wūdz lǐtoude sywésheng dōu dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	All the students in this room understand a little Chinese.
	Syān:	Jèige wūdz wàitoude sywésheng yě dōu dǔng Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do all the students outside this room understand Chinese too?
	Sywé:	Jèige wūdz wàitoude sywésheng bùdōu dǔng Jūnggwo hwà.	Not all the students outside this room understand Chinese.
8.	Syān:	Nǐmende bānjǎng dzài jèr dzwò shémma ne?	What is your squad leader doing here?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende bānjǎng dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà ne.	Our squad leader is studying Chinese here.
	Syān:	Nǐmende lyánjǎng yě dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Is your company commander also studying Chinese here?
	Sywé:	Wǒmende lyánjǎng búdzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà. Tā dzài tāde wūdz lǐtou dzwòshr̀ ne.	Our company commander isn't studying Chinese here. He is working in his room.

Syān:	Wǒ dzài nǎr syědz̀ ne?	Where am I writing?
Sywé:	Nǐ dzài hēibǎnshàng syědz̀ ne.	You are writing on the blackboard.
Syān:	Nǐmen yě dzài hēibǎnshàng syědz̀ ma?	Are you also writing on the blackboard?
Sywé:	Wǒmen búdzài hēibǎnshàng syědz̀. Wǒmen dzài jèr nyàn Jūnggwo shū ne.	We aren't writing on the blackboard. We are reading a Chinese book here.
Syān:	Nèigè wūdz de sywésheng tyāntyān dzài nèr dzwò shémma?	What do the students in that room do everyday?
Sywé:	Nèigè wūdzde sywésheng tyāntyān dzài nèr shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	The students in that room speak Chinese (there) everyday.
Syān:	Jèigè wūdzde sywésheng yě tyāntyān dzài jèr shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Do the students in this room also speak Chinese (there) everyday?
Sywé:	Jèigè wūdzde sywésheng yě tyāntyān dzài jèr shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	The students in this room also speak Chinese (there) everyday.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

jr̄	jŕ	jř	jr̀	jywān,	jwān	jwān,	jywān
jyūn	jyún	jyǔn	jyùn	lúng,	láng	láng,	lúng
syūng	syúng	syǔng	syùng	jř,	chř	chř,	jř
jywān	jywán	jywǎn	jywàn	jywàn,	jyàn	jyàn,	jywàn
sywān	sywán	sywǎn	sywàn				
chywān	chywán	chywǎn	chywàn				

2.

syīn hēibǎn	hēibǎn syīn
cháng hēibǎn	hēibǎn cháng
syǎu hēibǎn	hēibǎn syǎu
dà hēibǎn	hēibǎn dà
tā chr̄ táng	wǒ chr̄ táng
tā méi táng	wǒ méi táng
tā mǎi táng	wǒ mǎi táng
tā yàu táng	wǒ yàu táng
Jāng méi byǎu	wǒ yǒu byǎu
Wáng méi byǎu	nǐ yǒu byǎu
Lǐ méi bǐ	wǒ yǒu bǐ
Jàu méi bǐ	nǐ yǒu bǐ

3. Jāng Shàngwèi yǒu lyǎngge háidz. Dà háidz shr̀ nánde. Syǎu háidz shr̀ nyǔde. Dà háidz dzài wūdz wàitou nyànshū. Syǎu háidz dzài wūdz lǐtou chr̄fàn. Wūdz chyántoude dūngsyi hěn hǎukàn. Wūdz hòutoude dūngsyi bútài hǎukàn. Jāng Tàitai tyāntyān dzài wūdz lǐtou dzwò fàn.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) In front of the school there is a Chinese restaurant.

2) The teacher writes on the blackboard; students write on paper.

3) Do you have friends here?

4) How many rooms are there in this house?

5) The parents are in the house, and the children are outside.

6) The pencil on the table is not mine; the pencil under the table is mine.

7) He does not eat at home. He eats in a restaurant everyday.

8) He is shopping downtown.

9) His elder brother and elder sister are not here. They are studying at school.

10) Our house is behind the school.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐde shū dzài jwōdz shàngtou ma?

2) Sywéshengde chìchē dzài jèige fángdz hòutou ma?

3) Nǐmende jyūnfú dzài búdzài jèige wūdz lǐtou?

4) Wǒde bǐ dzài nǎr?

5) Jèige jwōdzshangde bǐ shr̀ nǐde ma?

6) Nǐmen dzài wūdzlì dzwò shémma ne?

7) Wǒ dzài wūdzli dzwò shémma ne?

8) Wǒ dzài nǎr syědz̀ ne?

9) Hēibǎnshangde dz̀ nǐ dǔng budǔng?

10) Jèige wūdzlǐ yǒu jǐgè sywésheng?

11) Jèige wūdzlǐde sywésheng dōu dzài wo chyántou ma?

12) Nǐ tyāntyān dzài jyēshangde fàngwar chr̄fan ma?

13) Nǐde jyā dzài sywésyàu chyántou ma?

14) Nǐ fùchīn mǔchīn dzài jèr ma?

15) Jèige wūdzlǐ yǒu méiyou lǎurén?

16) Jèige wūdz wàitóu yǒu méiyou rén?

17) Nǐde shū dzài yǐdz syǎtóu ma?

18) Jèige dzwōdzshang yǒu jǐben shū?

19) Jèige dzwōdzshangde shū dōu shr̀ nǐde ma?

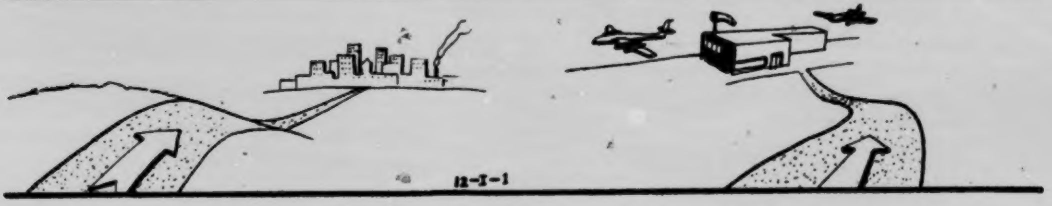
20) Nǐde shū dzài něige dzwōdzshang?

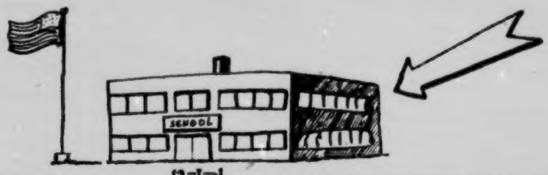
LESSON 12

I. Structural Dialogues

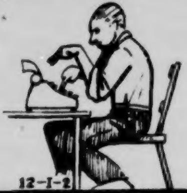
1.	Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu jyēshang chyù ma?	Are you going to town?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu jyēshang chyù.	I am going to town.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dàu jyēshang chyù ma?	Do you go to town everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dàu jyēshang chyù.	I go to town everyday.
	Syān:	Tā yě dàu jyēshang chyù ma?	Is he also going to town?
	Sywé:	Tā búdàu jyēshang chyù.	He isn't going to town.
	Syān:	Tā dàu nǎr chyù?	Where is he going?
	Sywé:	Tā dàu fēijīchǎng chyù.	He is going to the airport.
	Syān:	Tāmen cháng dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do they often come to the school?
	Sywé:	Tāmen bùcháng dàu sywésyàu lái.	They don't often come to the school.
	Syān:	Shéi cháng dàu sywésyàu lái?	Who often comes to the school?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen cháng dàu sywésyàu lái.	We often come to the school.
2.	Syān:	Jāng Syānsheng dzài nǎr dzwòshr̀?	Where is Mr. Jāng working?
	Sywé:	Jāng Syānsheng dzài jèige sywésyàu dzwòshr̀.	Mr. Jāng is working at this school.
	Syān:	Jāng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái dzwò shémma?	For what purpose does Mr. Jāng come to this school?

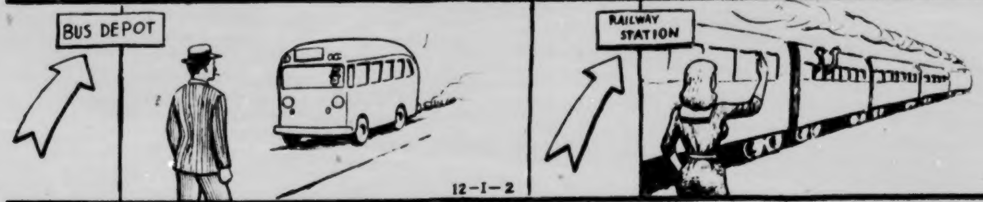
lesson 12

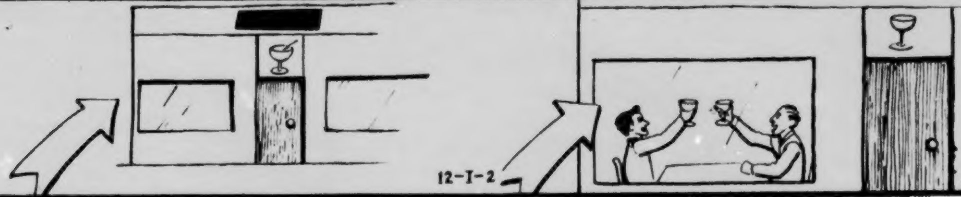

12-I-1

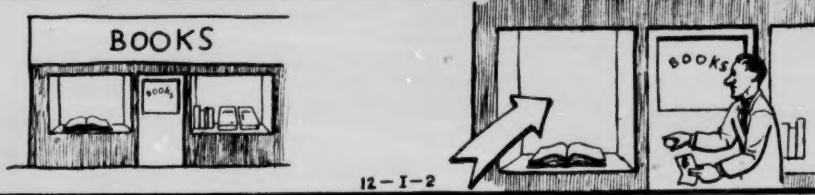


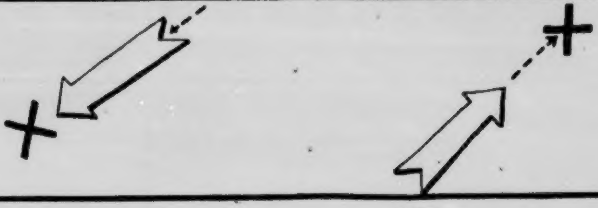
12-I-1


12-I-2


BUS DEPOT
RAILWAY STATION
12-I-2


12-I-2


BOOKS
BOOKS
BOOKS
12-I-2



Sywé:	Jāng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái dzwòshr̀.	Mr. Jāng comes to this school to work.
Syān:	Nǐ gēn nǐ tàitai dōu dàu chìchējàn chyù ma?	Do you go with your wife to the bus station?
Sywé:	Wǒ dàu chìchējàn chyù, wǒ tàitai dàu hwǒchējàn chyù.	I go to the bus station, but my wife goes to the railway station.
Syān:	Nǐ dàu chìchējàn chyù dzwò shémma?	What are you going to the bus station for?
Sywé:	Wǒ dàu chìchējàn chyù jyē péngyou.	I am going to the bus station to meet friends.
Syān:	Nǐ tàitai dàu hwǒchējàn chyù dzwò shémma?	What is your wife going to the railway station for?
Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai dàu hwǒchējàn chyù sùng rén.	My wife is going to the railway station to see someone off.
Syān:	Chǐng nǐ gēn wǒ dàu nèige pùdz chyù, hǎu bùhǎu?	How about going with me to that store?
Sywé:	Dàu nèige pùdz chyù dzwò shémma?	Why go to that store?
Syān:	Wǒ chǐng nǐ dàu nèr chyù hē yìdyǎr jyǒu.	I am inviting you to go there for a little drink.
Sywé:	Syèsye ni, wǒ búyàu chyù, wǒ búhwèi hē jyǒu.	Thank you. I am not going. I can't drink.
Syān:	Nèi shr̀ shūpù búshr̀?	Is that a book store or not?
Sywé:	Nèi shr̀ shūpù.	That is a book store.
Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu nèige shūpù chyù mǎi shū ma?	Do you want to go to that book store to buy some books?
Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu nèige shūpù chyù mǎi shū.	I want to go to that book store to buy some books.

Syān:	Tā yě yàu dàu nèige shūpù chyù mǎi shū ma?	Does he also want to go to that book store to buy some books?
Sywé:	Tā yě yàu dàu nèige shūpù chyù mǎi shū.	He also wants to go to that book store to buy some books.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jèige chéng dà búdà?	Is this city big?
	Sywé:	Jèige chéng bútài dà.	This city isn't very big.
	Syān:	Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?	Where are you going?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.	I am going to town.
	Syān:	Nǐ dàu chéng lǐtou chyù dzwò shémma?	For what purpose are you going to town?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dàu chéng lǐtou chyù chr̄fàn.	I am going to town to eat.
	Syān:	Chéng lǐtou yǒu hǎu fàngwǎr ma?	Is there a good restaurant in town?
	Sywé:	Chéng lǐtou yǒu yíge hěn hǎude fàngwǎr.	There is a very good restaurant downtown.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dàu nèr chyù chr̄fàn ma?	Do you go there to eat every day?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dàu nèr chyù chr̄fàn.	I go there every day to eat.
	Syān:	Wǒ gēn nǐ dàu nèr chyù chr̄fàn, hǎu bùhǎu?	How about letting me go there to eat with you?
	Sywé:	Hǎu, nǐ yě yàu dàu nèr chyù hē yìdyǎr jyǒu ma?	Fine, do you also want to go there for a little drink?
	Syān:	Wǒ búhwèi hē jyǒu.	I can't drink.
2.	Syān:	Shéi yàu dàu jèr lái?	Who is coming here?
	Sywé:	Wǒ péngyou yàu dàu jèr lái.	My friend is coming here.
	Syān:	Tā dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?	Why is he coming here?
	Sywé:	Tā dàu jèr lái mǎi dūngsyi.	He is coming here to buy things.

	Syān:	Tā cháng dàu jèige pùdz lái mǎi dūngsyi ma?	Does he often come to this store to shop?
	Sywé:	Tā bùcháng dàu jèige pùdz lái mǎi dūngsyi.	He doesn't often come to this store to shop.
	Syān:	Tā tàitai gēn tā lái ma?	Is his wife coming with him?
	Sywé:	Tā tàitai gēn tā lái.	His wife is coming with him.
	Syān:	Nǐ yàu chyù jyē tāmen ma?	Are you going to meet them?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu chyù jyē tāmen.	I am going to meet them.
	Syān:	Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù jyē tāmen?	Where are you going to meet them?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dàu hwǒchējàn chyù jyē tāmen.	I am going to the railway station to meet them.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?	Where are you going?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dàu fēijīchǎng chyù.	I am going to the airport.
	Syān:	Nǐ dàu fēijīchǎng chyù dzwò shémma?	Why are you going to the airport?
	Sywé:	Wǒ chyù sùng péngyou.	I am going there to see a friend off.
	Syān:	Nǐ péngyou yàu dàu nǎr chyù?	Where is your friend going?
	Sywé:	Tā yàu dàu Dégwo chyù.	He is going to Germany.
	Syān:	Tā dàu Dégwo chyù dzwò shémma?	What is the purpose of his going to Germany?
	Sywé:	Tā yàu dàu Dégwo chyù mǎi chìchē.	He is going to Germany to buy some cars.
	Syān:	Tā tàitai gēn háidz dōu gēn tā chyù ma?	Are his wife and children all going with him?
	Sywé:	Tā tàitai gēn háidz dōu gēn tā chyù.	His wife and children are all going with him.

4. Vocabulary

185.	cháng(cháng)	A:	often
186.	chéng	N:	city
187.	chéng lǐtou (chéngli)	N:	downtown (inside the city)
188.	chìchējàn	N:	bus station
189.	chǐng	V:	invite, request
190.	chyù	V:	go
191.	dàu	CV:	to (towards)
192.	fēijīchǎng	N:	airport
193.	hǎu buhǎu	IE:	how about (it)?
194.	hē	V:	drink
195.	hwǒchējàn	N:	railroad station
196.	jyāu	V:	teach
197.	jyāushū	VO:	teach
198.	jyē	V:	meet (people at a train, boat, etc.)
199.	jyǒu	N:	wine, liquor
200.	jyǒugwǎr	N:	wine shop; bar
201.	lái	V:	come
202.	-pù	N:	-store
203.	pùdz	N:	store
204.	sùng	V:	see off; escort

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Co-verbial Phrase of Direction

The main verb lái (come) or chyù (go) may take a co-verbial phrase with dàu (to) to show the direction. The co-verbial phrase precedes the main verb. Lái indicates motion toward the speaker, and chyù indicates motion toward a point other than the speaker.

Wǒ dàu Měigwo lái.	I come to America.
Tā dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	He goes to China.
Wǒ búdàu Dégwo chyù, yě búdàu Rběn chyù.	I don't go to Germany, nor do I go to Japan.

2. Purpose of Coming or Going

Expressions to show the purpose of coming or going may appear either before the main verb lái or chyù, or after the main verb. Sometimes the main verb repeats itself with the purpose expression in between.

Tā lái nyànshū.	He comes to study.
Tā nyànshū lái.	He comes to study.
Tā lái nyànshū lái.	He comes to study.
Wǒ chyù mǎi bǐ.	I go to buy a pen.
Wǒ mǎi bǐ chyù.	I go to buy a pen.
Wǒ chyù mǎi bǐ chyù.	I go to buy a pen.

Translate the following:

1) He goes to school.

2) He goes to school to study.

3) He comes to America.

4) He comes to America to sing.

5) We go to a restaurant.

6) We go to a restaurant to eat.

3. Pronoun before Place Words

Pronouns may be used before place words such as jèr or nèr.

Chǐng nǐ dàu wǒ jèr lái.	Please come here to me.
Wǒ búài dàu tā nèr chyù.	I don't like to go to his place.
Chǐng nǐ dzài wǒmen jèr chr̄ yìdyǎr fàn.	Please have a bite to eat here with us.

4. Different Meanings of gēn

Gēn is used to link two nouns. It means "and" as introduced in Lesson 9. Gēn is also used as a co-verb, and means "with" as gēn tā chyù (go with him); "to" as gēn tā shwō (speak to him or tell him); "from" as gēn Lǐ Syānsheng sywé (learn from Mr. Lǐ).

Shū gēn bàu, wǒ dōu yàu.	I want both books and newspapers.
Wǒ mǎi jwōdz gēn yǐdz.	I buy tables and chairs.
Tā gēn shéi dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	With whom is he going to China?
Tā gēn tā tàitai dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	He is going to China with his wife.

Wǒ gēn tā shwō wǒ bùchyù.	I tell him that I am not going.
Nǐmen dzài jèige sywésyàu gēn Jūnggwo syānshang sywé Jūnggwo hwà.	You are learning the Chinese language from Chinese teachers at this school.

Translate the following:

1) He comes to America with his father.

2) Master Sergeant Wáng goes to Japan with First Lieutenant Lǐ.

3) Second Lieutenant Jāng and Sergeant Lǐ come here everyday.

4) I like to buy neckties and shirts.

5) Please speak to him.

6) From whom do you learn to sing?

5. Pùdz and -pù

There are two ways in Chinese to say "a store": pùdz or -pù. While pùdz is an individual word, -pù is a bound form and is usually suffixed to a noun which describes the nature of the store.

shū pùdz, shūpù	book store
jř pùdz, jřpù	stationery store
màudz pùdz, màupù	hat shop

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1. Syān:	Nǐ dàu chéng lǐtou chyù ma?	Are you going to town?
Sywé:	Wǒ búdàu chéng lǐtou chyù. Wǒ dàu chéng wàitou chyù.	I am not going to town. I am going out of town.
Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu fēijīchǎng chyù ma?	Are you going to the airport?
Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu fēijīchǎng chyù.	I am going to the airport.
Syān:	Nǐ dàu búdàu shūpù chyù?	Are you going to the book store or not?
Sywé:	Wǒ búdàu shūpù chyù.	I am not going to the book store.
Syān:	Nǐ dàu búdàu wǒ jyā lái?	Are you coming to my house or not?
Sywé:	Wǒ dàu nǐ jyā lái.	I am coming to your house.
Syān:	Syǎuháidz dàu jèigè sywésyàu lái ma?	Are children coming to this school?
Sywé:	Shǎuháidz búdàu jèigè sywésyàu lái.	Children aren't coming to this school.
Syān:	Shémma rén dàu jèigè sywésyàu lái?	What kind of people come to this school?
Sywé:	Jyūngwān gēn bīng dàu jèigè sywésyàu lái.	Officers and soldiers come to this school.
Syān:	Nǐ fùchin, mǔchin yàu búyàu dàu jèr lái?	Are you father and mother coming here?
Sywé:	Wǒ fùchin, mǔchin búyàu dàu jèr lái.	My father and mother aren't coming here.
Syān:	Nǐ fùchin, mǔchin yàu dàu nǎr chyù?	Where are your father and mother going?

	Sywé:	Wǒ fùchin, mǔchin yàu dàu wǒ dìdi jyā chyù.	My father and mother are going to my younger brother's house.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu nǎr chyù?	Where are you going?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu fēijīchǎng chyù.	I am going to the airport.
	Syān:	Nǐ dàu fēijīchǎng chyù dzwò shémma?	Why are you going to the airport?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dàu fēijīchǎng chyù jyē wǒ nyǔpéngyou.	I am going to the airport to meet my girl friend.
	Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou dàu jèr lái ma?	Is your girl friend coming here?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou dàu jèr lái.	My girl friend is coming here.
	Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?	What is your girl friend coming here for?
	Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou dàu jèr lái kàn wǒ.	My girl friend is coming here to see me.
	Syān:	Syānsheng cháng dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?	What does the teacher come here often for?
	Sywé:	Syānsheng cháng dàu jèr lái jyāushū.	The teacher often comes to teach.
	Syān:	Sywésheng cháng dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?	What do the students come here often for?
	Sywé:	Sywésheng cháng dàu jèr lái nyànshū.	Students often come here to study.
	Syān:	Syānsheng gēn sywésheng dōu syǐhwan jèige chéng ma?	Do all the teachers and students like this city?
	Sywé:	Syānsheng gēn sywésheng dōu syǐhwan jèige chéng.	All the teachers and students like this city.

Syān:	Jāng Tàitai cháng dàu jyóugwǎr chyù dzwò shémma?	For what does Mrs. Jāng often go to the bar?
Sywé:	Jāng Tàitai cháng dàu jyóugwǎr chyù dzwòshr̀.	Mrs. Jāng often goes to the bar to work.
Syān:	Jāng Syānsheng yě cháng dàu jyóugwǎr chyù dzwòshr̀ ma?	Does Mr. Jāng also go to the bar often to work?
Sywé:	Jāng Syānsheng cháng dàu jyóugwǎr chyù hējyǒu.	Mr. Jāng often goes to the bar to drink.
Syān:	Bái Shàngwèi cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái dzwò shémma?	For what does Captain Bái often come to the school store?
Sywé:	Bái Shàngwèi cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái mǎi dūngsyi.	Captain Bái often comes to the school store to shop.
Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dàu jèige wūdz lái dzwò shémma?	For what do you come to this room everyday?
Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dàu jèige wūdz lái sywé Jūnggwo hwà.	I come to this room everyday to learn Chinese.
Syān:	Nèige rén búdàu chìchējàn chyù sùng péngyou ma?	Isn't that man going to the bus station to see friends off?
Sywé:	Nèige rén búdàu chìchējàn chyù sùng péngyou.	That man isn't going to the bus station to see friends off.
Syān:	Nèige rén dàu nǎr chyù sùng péngyou?	Where is that man going to see friends off?
Sywé:	Nèige rén dàu hwǒchējàn chyù sùng péngyou.	That man is going to the railway station to see friends off.
3. Syān:	Nǐ dàu chéng wàitou chyù hē jyǒu ma?	Are you going out of town to drink?

Sywé:	Wǒ búdàu chéng wàitou chyù hē jyǒu.	I am not going out of town to drink.
Syān:	Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù hē jyǒu?	Where are you going to drink?
Sywé:	Wǒ dàu jyēshang chyù hē jyǒu.	I am going downtown to drink.
Syān:	Nǐ gēn nǐ tàitai dàu jyēshang chyù hē jyǒu ma?	Are you going with your wife downtown to drink?
Sywé:	Wǒ bùgēn wǒ tàitai chyù, wǒ gēn wǒ gēge chyù.	I am not going with my wife, I am going with my elder brother.
Syān:	Nǐ búdàu hwǒchējàn sùng rén chyù ma?	Aren't you going to the railway station to see people off?
Sywé:	Wǒ búdàu hwǒchējàn sùng rén chyù.	I am not going to the railway station to see people off.
Syān:	Nǐ dàu búdàu chìchējàn sùng rén chyù?	Are you going to the bus station to see people off or not?
Sywé:	Wǒ dàu chìchējàn sùng rén chyù.	I am going to the bus station to see people off.
Syān:	Nǐ háidz gēn nǐ dàu chìchējàn chyù sùng rén ma?	Are your children going with you to the bus station to see people off?
Sywé:	Wǒ háidz gēn wǒ dàu chìchējàn chyù sùng rén.	My children are going with me to the bus station to see people off.
Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái sywé R̀běn hwà ma?	Does Mr. Wáng come to this school to learn Japanese?
Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng búdàu jèige sywésyàu lái sywé R̀běn hwà.	Mr. Wáng doesn't come to this school to learn Japanese.

Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái dzwò shémma?	What does Mr. Wáng come to this school for?
Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái jyāushū.	Mr. Wáng comes to this school to teach.
Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái jyāu shémma?	What does Mr. Wáng come to this school to teach?
Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng dàu jèige sywésyàu lái jyāu Jūnggwo hwà.	Mr. Wáng comes to this school to teach the Chinese language.
Syān:	Shéi cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái?	Who often comes to the school store?
Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái.	My girl friend often comes to the school store.
Syān:	Nǐ nyǔpéngyou cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái chr̄fàn ma?	Does your girl friend often come to the school store to eat?
Sywé:	Wǒ nyǔpéngyou bùlái chr̄fàn. Tā lái kàn péngyou.	My girl friend doesn't come to eat. She comes to visit friends.
Syān:	Nǐ yě cháng dàu sywésyàude pùdz lái kàn péngyou ma?	Do you also often come to the school store to visit friends?
Sywé:	Wǒ bùlái kàn péngyou. Wǒ lái jyē wǒ nyǔpéngyou.	I don't come to visit friends. I come to meet my girl friend.
4. Syān:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ sùng tā tàitai dàu nǎr chyù?	Where is SFC Lǐ accompanying his wife?
Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀ sùng tā tàitai dàu fēijīchǎng chyù.	SFC Lǐ is accompanying his wife to the airport.
Syān:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀de tàitai bùsyǐhwan jèr ma?	Doesn't SFC Lǐ's wife like it here?

	Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngshr̀de tàitai hén syǐhwan jèr, kěshr tā yàu dàu tā jyějye jyā chyù.	SFC Lǐ's wife likes it here very much, but she is going to her elder sister's home.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai sùng búsùng nǐ dàu sywésyàu lái?	Does your wife bring you (here) to school or not?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai sùng wǒ dàu sywésyàu lái.	My wife brings me (here) to school.
	Syān:	Nǐ tàitai cháng sùng nǐ dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Does your wife often bring you (here) to school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai cháng sùng wǒ dàu sywésyàu lái, kěshr bùtyāntyān sùng wǒ dàu sywésyàu lái.	My wife often brings me (here) to school, but not every day.
5.	Syān:	Wǒmen dàu chéng lǐtou chyù hē dyǎr jyǒu hǎu bùhǎu?	How about letting us go downtown to have a little drink?
	Sywé:	Hǎu. Wǒ yě yàu dàu chéng lǐtou chyù mǎi dyǎr dūngsyi.	Fine. I also want to go downtown to do some shopping.
	Syān:	Chǐng nǐ mèimei yě gēn wǒmen chyù, hǎu ma?	How about asking your younger sister to go with us?
	Sywé:	Wǒ mèimei búhwèi hē jyǒu. Tā yàu dzài jyāli syědz̀.	My younger sister can't drink. She wants to write at home.
	Syān:	Nǐ sùng wǒ dàu chéngli chyù mǎi byǎu, hǎu ma?	How about taking me to town to buy a watch?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hěn syǐhwan sùng nǐ chyù, kěshr wǒ yàu dàu jyǒugwǎr chyù hējyǒu.	I would like very much to go with you, but I want to go to a bar to have a drink.
	Syān:	Wǒ chǐng nǐ hējyǒu, nǐ sùng wǒ chyù, hǎu bùhǎu?	If I treat you to a drink, will you take me?

Sywé:	Hǎu. Wǒ sùng nǐ dàu chéngli chyù mǎi byǎu.	Fine. I will take you to town to buy a watch.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. dz̄ dź dž dz̀ dzān, dzāng dzāng, dzān
dzwūn dzwún dzwǔn dzwùn dzé, dzéi dzéi, dzé
hwāng hwáng hwǎng hwàng dzwǒ, dzǒu dzǒu, dzwǒ
dzwō dzwó dzwǒ dzwò dzàu, dzwò dzwò, dzàu
hwēi hwéi hwěi hwèi
dzāng dzáng dzǎng dzàng

2. Tā cháng lái Tā cháng chyù
Shéi cháng lái Shéi cháng chyù
Wǒ cháng lái Wǒ cháng chyù
Jàu cháng lái Jàu cháng chyù
sānbān bīng sānbān rén
shŕbān bīng shŕbān rén
wǔbān bīng jyǒubān rén
lyòubān bīng sz̀bān rén
hěn tsūngmíng bùtsūngmíng
shǎu hējyǒu dwō syědz̀
tài hǎuchr̄ bùhǎuchr̄
tài kèchi búkèchi

3. Lǐ Syānsheng yǒu yígè péngyou syìng wáng. Wáng Syānsheng dzài Jūnggwo ne. Tā yàu dàu jèr lái jyāushū. Tā hěn syǐhwan dàu Měigwo lái. Lǐ Syānsheng yàu dàu fēijīchǎng chyù jyē tā. Fēijīchǎng búdzài chéng lǐtou. Hwǒchējàn gēn chìchējàn dōu dzài chéngli. Fēijīchǎng dzài chéng wàitou.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) Mrs. Jāng often goes downtown. She likes this city very much.

2) The airport is not in the city. It is outside the city.

3) The bus station is in front of the school. The railroad station is behind the school.

4) Mr. Jāng teaches at the school. His children study at the school.

5) There is a book store and a hat shop in the city.

6) Mr. Jāng is a good teacher. He doesn't drink too often.

7) Things are very expensive in that store. I don't go there to shop.

8) New wines are not good. Old wines are good.

9) Mr. Jāng goes to the airport with his wife to meet their friend.

10) There are too many bars in the city.

2. Conversation

1) Jèr yǒu fēijīchǎng ma?

2) Fēijīchǎng dzài nǎr?

3) Jèr yǒu hwǒchējàn ma?

4) Hwǒchējàn dzài nǎr?

5) Jèr yǒu chìchējàn ma?

6) Chìchējàn dzài nǎr?

7) Nǐ tàitai tyāntyān sùng nǐ dàu sywésyàu lái ma?

8) Nǐ dzài sywésyàulǐ jyāushū ma?

9) Nǐ chángcháng hējyǒu ma?

10) Nĭ cháng dàu jyŏugwăr chyù hējyŏu ma?

11) Jyēshangde pùdz dwō budwo?

12) Jyēshang dōu yŏu shémma pùdz?

13) Jèr yŏu méiyŏu màudz pùdz?

14) Jèr yŏu méiyŏu shūpù?

15) Nèige shūpù mài syīnshū ma?

16) Nèige shūpù mài jyòushū ma?

17) Nĭ yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?

18) Nĭ yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù dzwò shémma?

19) Hwŏchējàn mài dūngsyi búmài?

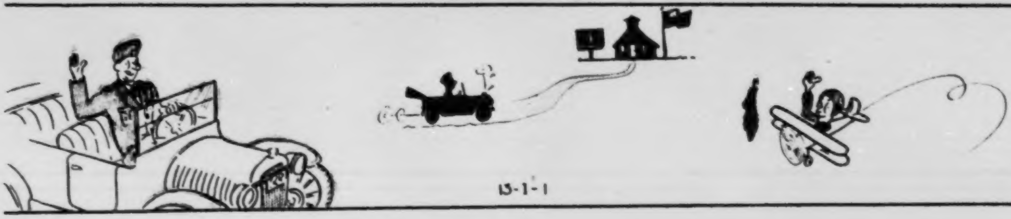
20) Hwŏchējàn mài shémma dūngsyi?

LESSON 13

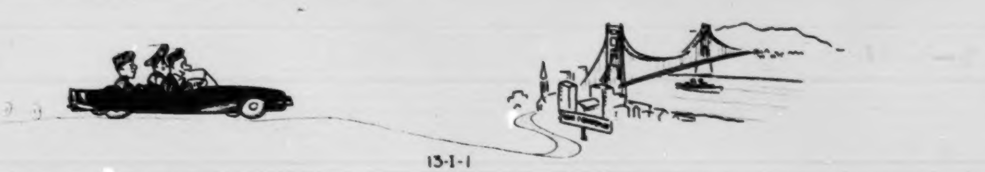
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nĭ hwèi kāi chìchē ma?	Can you drive a car?
	Sywé:	Wŏ hwèi kāi chìchē.	I can drive a car.
	Syān:	Nĭ kāi chìchē dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you drive to school?
	Sywé:	Wŏ kāi chìchē dàu sywésyàu lái.	I drive to school.
	Syān:	Nĭ hwèi kāi fēijī ma?	Can you fly an airplane?
	Sywé:	Wŏ hwèi kāi fēijī.	I can fly an airplane.
	Syān:	Bái Shàuwèi kāi chìchē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?	Is Second Lieutenant Bái going to San Francisco by car?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàuwèi kāi chìchē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	Second Lieutenant Bái is going to San Francisco by car.
	Syān:	Nĭ gēn tā yíkwàr chyù ma?	Are you going with him?
	Sywé:	Wŏ gēn tā yíkwàr chyù.	I am going with him.
	Syān:	Nĭ dzwò tāde chìchē chyù ma?	Are you riding there in his car?
	Sywé:	Wŏ dzwò tāde chìchē chyù.	I am going there in his car.
	Syān:	Lĭ Shàngshr̀ dzĕmma chyù?	How is SFC Lĭ going?
	Sywé:	Lĭ Shàngshr̀ gēn wŏmen yíkwàr dzwò chē chyù.	SFC Lĭ is riding with us.
2.	Syān:	Nĭ tsúng năr lái?	Where do you come from?
	Sywé:	Wŏ tsúng jyāli lái.	I come from home.
	Syān:	Nĭ jyā lí jèr ywăn bùywăn?	Is it far from your home to here or not?
	Sywé:	Wŏ jyā lí jèr bútài ywăn.	It isn't too far from my home to here.

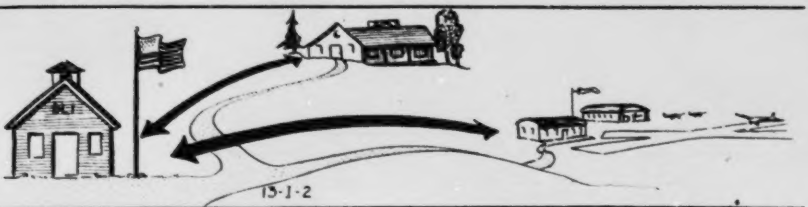
LESSON 13



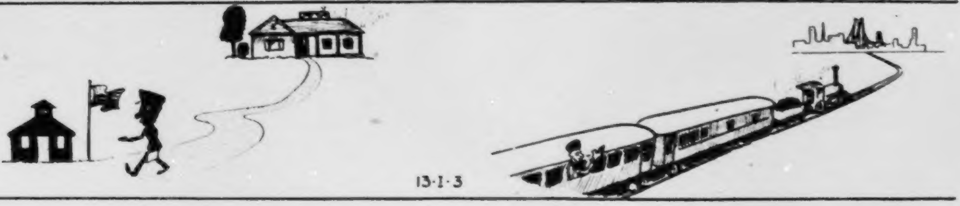
13-1-1



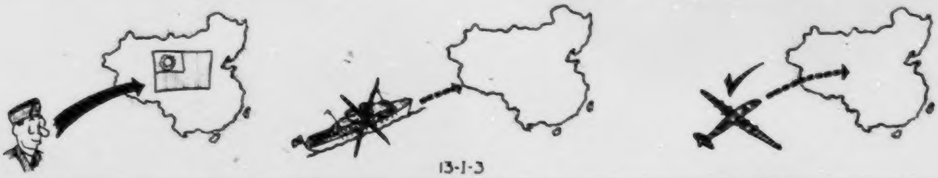
13-1-1



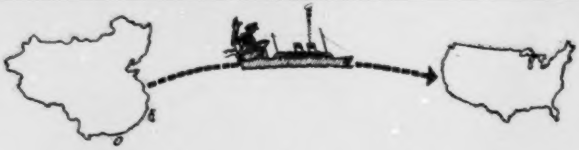
13-1-2



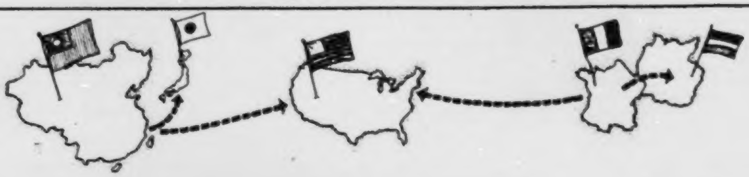
13-1-3



13-1-3



13-1-3



Syān:	Jèr lí fēijīchǎng hěn jìn ma?	Is the airport very close to here?
Sywé:	Jèr lí fēijīchǎng hěn jìn.	The airport is very close to here.
3. Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān tsúng jyā dzǒudau sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you walk from home to school everyday?
Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān tsúng jyā dzǒudau sywésyàu lái.	I walk from home to school everyday.
Syān:	Nǐ tsúng jèr dzěmma dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù?	How do you go to San Francisco from here?
Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng jèr dzwò hwǒchē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	I go by train from here to San Francisco.
Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?	Are you going to China?
Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	I am going to China.
Syān:	Nǐ yàu dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?	Are you going to China by boat?
Sywé:	Wǒ búyau dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	I am not going to China by boat.
Syān:	Nǐ yàu dzěmma dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	How are you going to China?
Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dzwò fēijī dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	I am going to China by airplane.
Syān:	Nǐ péngyou yàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Měigwo lái ma?	Is your friend coming to America from China?
Sywé:	Wǒ péngyou yàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Měigwo lái.	My friend is coming to America from China.
Syān:	Tā tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Měigwo lái, dzěmma lái?	How is he coming to America from China?
Sywé:	Tā tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Měigwo dzwò chwán lái.	He is coming to America from China by boat.

Syān:	Tā tsúng Jūnggwo daù Mĕigwo lái, dzwò shemma?	What does he come to America from China for?
Sywé:	Tā tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Mĕigwo lái nyànshū.	He comes to America from China to study.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nǐ jyā lí sywésyàu ywǎn buywan?	Is it far from your home to school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā lí sywésyàu bùhén ywǎn.	It isn't very far from my home to school.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dzwò chìchē dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you come to school by car everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búdzwò chìchē dàu sywésyàu lái.	I don't come to school by car.
	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dzěmma dàu sywésyàu lái?	How do you come to school everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dzǒudàu sywésyàu lái.	I come to school everyday by walking.
	Syān:	Tsúng nǐ jyā dzǒudàu sywésyàu lái, nǐ búlèi ma?	Coming to school from your home by walking, doesn't that make you tired?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búlèi.	I am not tired.
2.	Syān:	Nǐ yàu dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?	Are you going to San Francisco?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yàu dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	I am going to San Francisco.
	Syān:	Tsúng jèr dàu Jyòujīnshān yǒu hwǒchē ma?	Is there a train from here to San Francisco?
	Sywé:	Tsúng jèr dàu Jyòujīnshān yǒu hwǒchē.	There is a train from here to San Francisco.
	Syān:	Nǐ yàu dzwò hwǒchē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?	Are you going to San Francisco by train?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùsyǐhwan dzwò hwǒchē chyù.	I don't like to go by train.
	Syān:	Nǐ yàu dzěmma chyù?	How are you going?

	Sywé:	Wǒ dzwò nǐde chìchē chyù, hǎu bùhǎu?	How about letting me ride in your car?
	Syān:	Nǐ búhwèi kāi chē ma?	Can't you drive a car?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hwèi kāi chē, kěshr̀ wǒ méiyǒu chìchē.	I can drive a car, but I don't have a car.
	Syān:	Hǎu, nǐ gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù.	Fine, you go with me.
	Sywé:	Syèsye nǐ.	Thank you.
	Syān:	Búkèchi.	You're welcome.
3.	Syān:	Měigwo lí Jūnggwo hén ywǎn ma?	Is America very far from China?
	Sywé:	Měigwo lí Jūnggwo hén ywǎn.	America is very far from China.
	Syān:	Tsúng Měigwo dáu Jūnggwo dzwó fēijī chyú, gwèi búgwèi?	Is it expensive to go from America to China by airplane?
	Sywé:	Tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo dzwó fēijī chyú, hěn gwèi.	It is very expensive to go from America to China by airplane.
	Syān:	Dzwò chwán chyù yě hěn gwèi ma?	Is it also very expensive to go by boat?
	Sywé:	Dzwò chwán chyù bùhěn gwèi.	It isn't very expensive to go by boat.
	Syān:	Nǐ syǐhwan dzwò chwán ma?	Do you like to go by boat?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hěn syǐhwan dzwò chwán.	I like very much to go by boat.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě yàu dzwò chwán tsúng jèr dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?	Are you also going from here to San Francisco by boat?
	Sywé:	Tsúng jèr méiyǒu chwán dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	There is no boat from here to San Francisco.
4.	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān gēn shéi yíkwàr dàu sywésyàu lái?	With whom do you come to school everyday?

Sywé:	Wǒ gēn wǒ péngyou yíkwàr lái.	I come with my friend.
Syān:	Nǐmen dzěmma lái?	How do you come?
Sywé:	Wǒmen cháng dzwò chìchē lái.	We often come by car.
Syān:	Nǐ péngyou kāi chē ma?	Does your friend drive?
Sywé:	Tā bùkāi chē, wǒ kāi chē.	He doesn't drive. I drive.
Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dàu tā jyā chyù jyē tā ma?	Do you go to his house to get him everyday?
Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dàu tā jyā chyù jyē tā.	I go to his house to get him everyday.

5. Vocabulary

205.	chwán	N:	boat, ship
206.	dzěmma	A:	how?
207.	dzǒu	V:	walk
208.	dzwò	V: CV:	ride on (sit on) go by
209.	fēijī	N:	airplane
210.	gūnggùng-chìchē	N:	bus
211.	hwǒchē	N:	train
212.	jìn	SV:	near
213.	Jyòujīnshān	N:	San Francisco
214.	kāi	V:	operate (airplane, boat, vehicle, etc.)
215.	lí	CV:	from (be separated or distant from)
216.	Nyǒuywē	N:	New York
217.	tsúng	CV:	from
218.	yìkwàr	A:	together
219.	ywǎn	SV:	far

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Co-verbs of Conveyance

There are two functions for dzwò (go by) and kāi (drive, operate): as main verbs or as co-verbs.

1) As main verbs

Wǒ dzwò chìchē; tā kāi chìchē.	I ride in the car, and he drives it.
Wǒ syǐhwan dzwò fēijī, kěshr̀ wǒ búhwèi kāi fēijī.	I like to ride on an airplane, but I don't know how to fly it.

2) As co-verbs

They indicate the means of conveyance.

Tā yàu dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	He will go to China by boat.
Wǒ cháng kāi chìchē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	I often go to San Francisco by driving.
Nǐ yàu dzwò gūnggùngchìchē dàu Nyǒuywē chyù ma?	Do you want to go to New York by bus?

When no means of conveyance is used, dzǒu (by walking) may be used where the co-verbial phrase of conveyance is in the sentence to mean to come or go on foot.

Wǒ tyāntyān dzǒudàu sywésyàu chyù.	I walk to school everyday.
Chǐng nǐ dzǒudàu jèr lái.	Please walk over here.
Tāmen dzǒudàu nǎr chyù?	Where are they going on foot?

Translate the following:

1) I want to go to China by boat, not by airplane.
2) He knows how to operate a boat, but he doesn't know how to drive a car.
3) I want to go to San Francisco in his car.
4) He drives to school everyday.
5) He is walking into a store.
6) Everyday Mr. and Mrs. Wáng walk to a restaurant to eat.

2. Co-verb of Direction

Tsúng (from) is a co-verb of direction. While dàu (to) indicates the point where the motion goes to, tsúng (from) indicates the point where the motion starts from. Both of these two co-verbs may be used in a sentence to indicate the starting point and the destination.

Tā tsúng Dégwo lái.	He comes from Germany.
Tā dàu Fàgwo chyù.	He goes to France.
Wǒ yàu tsúng jèr dàu Nyǒuywē chyù.	I want to go to New York from here.
Nǐ dzěmma tsúng sywésyàu dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù?	How are you going from the school to San Francisco?

Translate the following:

1) He is coming from China to the United States to study.
2) Where are you going from here?
3) From where are you going to San Francisco?
4) Everyday I go from home to school by driving.
5) Are you coming to school from your home by walking?

3. Co-verb of Distance

Lí (from) is a co-verb to indicate the distance between two points. Lí is used together with the stative verb ywǎn (be far) or jìn (be near), as the case may be.

Měigwo lí Jūnggwo hěn ywǎn.	America is very far from China.
Sywésyàu lí chénglǐtou jìn bújìn?	Is the school near downtown?

Translate the following:

1) America is very far from Japan.

2) It is very close to the restaurant from here.

3) Is the airport near our school?

4) The bus station isn't far from the bar.

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nǐ jyāli rén dzěmma dàu jèr lái?	How are your folks coming here?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyāli rén dzwò fēijī dàu jèr lái.	My folks are coming here by airplane.
	Syān:	Jāng Syàshř búdzwò fēijī lái ma?	Isn't Corporal Jāng coming by airplane?
	Sywé:	Jāng Syàshř búdzwò fēijī lái. Tā dzwò hwǒchē lái.	Corporal Jāng isn't coming by airplane. He comes by train.
	Syān:	Nǐ dzěmma dàu Fàgwo chyù?	How do you go to France?
	Sywé:	Wǒ dzwò chwán dàu Fàgwo chyù.	I go to France by boat.
	Syān:	Nǐ dzwò búdzwò chwán dàu Řběn chyù?	Do you go to Japan by boat?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búdzwò chwán dàu Řběn chyù.	I don't go to Japan by boat.
	Syān:	Jàu Shàuwèi dzěmma dàu chéng lǐtou chyù?	How does Second Lieutenant Jàu go to town?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàuwèi kāi chē dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.	Second Lieutenant Jàu drives to town.
	Syān:	Jàu Shàuwèi dzěmma dàu sywésyàu lái?	How does Second Lieutenant Jàu come to school?
	Sywé:	Jàu Shàuwèi kāi chē dàu sywésyàu lái.	Second Lieutenant Jàu drives to school.
2.	Syān:	Měigwo lí Řběn ywàn ma?	Is America far from Japan?
	Sywé:	Měigwo lí Řběn hén ywǎn.	America is very far from Japan.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo lí Řběn ywǎn bùywǎn?	Is China far from Japan or not?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo lí Řběn bùywǎn.	China isn't far from Japan.

	Syān:	Wǒmen sywésyàu lí chìchējàn jìn ma?	Is our school close to the bus station?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen sywésyàu lí chìchējàn hěn jìn.	Our school is very close to the bus station.
	Syān:	Wǒmen sywésyàu lí fēijī-chǎng yé hěn jìn ma?	Is our school very close to the airport too?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen sywésyaù lí fēijī-chǎng bútài jìn.	Our school isn't very close to the airport.
3.	Syān:	Nǐmen yàu dàu R̀běn chyù ma?	Are you going to Japan?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen yàu dàu R̀běn chyù.	We are going to Japan.
	Syān:	Nǐmen tsúng nǎr dàu R̀běn chyù?	From where are you going to Japan?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen tsúng Jyòujīnshān dàu R̀běn chyù.	We are going from San Francisco to Japan.
	Syān:	Nǐmen bùtsúng jèr dàu R̀běn chyù ma?	Aren't you going from here to Japan?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùtsúng jèr dàu R̀běn chyù.	We aren't going from here to Japan.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng nǎr dàu sywésyàu lái?	From where do you come to school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng wǒ jyā dàu sywésyàu lái.	I come from my home to school.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng nǐ jyā dzěmma dàu sywésyàu lái?	How do you come from your home to school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng wǒ jyā kāi chìchē dàu sywésyàu lái.	I come from my home to school by car.
	Syān:	Jūnggwo rén tsúng Jūnggwo dzěmma dàu Měigwo lái?	How do Chinese come to America from China?
	Sywé:	Jūnggwo rén tsúng Jūnggwo dzwò chwán dàu Měigwo lái.	Chinese come to America from China by boat.

Syān:	Jūnggwo rén tsúng Jūnggwo dōu dzwò chwán dàu Měigwo lái ma?	Do all Chinese come to America from China by boat?
Sywé:	Jūnggwo rén tsúng Jūnggwo bùdōu dzwò chwán dàu Měigwo lái.	Not all Chinese come to America from China by boat.
4. Syān:	Jūngwèi dàu nǎr chyù?	Where is the First Lieutenant going?
Sywé:	Jūngwèi dàu jyēshang chyù.	The First Lieutenant is going downtown.
Syān:	Jūngwèi gēn shéi yìkwàr dàu jyēshang chyù?	With whom is the First Lieutenant going downtown?
Sywé:	Jūngwèi gēn Shàngwèi yìkwàr dàu jyēshang chyù.	The First Lieutenant is going downtown with the Captain.
Syān:	Jūngwèi gēn Shàngwèi yìkwàr dzěmma dàu jyēshang chyù?	How are the First Lieutenant and the Captain going downtown?
Sywé:	Jūngwèi gēn Shàngwèi yìkwàr dzǒudàu jyēshang chyù.	The First Lieutenant and the Captain are going downtown on foot.
Syān:	Nǐ tàitai gēn ní mǔchin yìkwàr dàu jèr lái ma?	Are your wife and your mother coming here together?
Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai bùgēn wó mǔchin yìkwàr dàu jèr lái.	My wife isn't coming here with my mother.
Syān:	Nǐ tàitai gēn shéi yìkwàr dàu jèr lái?	With whom is your wife coming here?
Sywé:	Wǒ tàitai gēn wǒmende háidz yìkwàr dàu jèr lái.	My wife is coming here together with our children.
Syān:	Nǐ tàitai gēn nǐmende háidz yìkwàr dzwò fēijī dàu jèr lái ma?	Is your wife together with your children coming here by airplane?
Sywé:	Tāmen búdzwò fēijī lái. Tāmen yìkwàr dzwò hwǒchē dàu jèr lái.	They aren't coming by airplane. They are coming here by train.

5.	Syān:	Nǐ tyāntyān dzwò shéide chē dàu syésyàu lái?	In whose car do you come to school everyday?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tyāntyān dzwò Wáng Shàngwèide chē dàu sywésyàu lái.	I come to school in Capt. Wáng's car everyday.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě dzwò Wáng Shàngweìde chē dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?	Are you also going to San Francisco in Capt. Wáng's car?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búdzwò tāde chē chyù. Wǒ dzwò hwǒchē chyù.	I am not going in his car. I am going by train.
	Syān:	Nǐmen dōu yàu dzwò chwán dàu Řběn chyù ma?	Are you all going to Japan by boat?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùdōu yàu dzwò chwán dàu Řběn chyù.	Not all of us are going to Japan by boat.
	Syān:	Řběn rén dzěmma dàu Měigwo lái?	How do the Japanese come to America?
	Sywé:	Řběn rén dzwò chwán lái, yě dzwò fēijī lái.	The Japanese come by boat and by airplane too.
6.	Syān:	Jèr lí chéng lǐtou jìn bújìn?	Is this place near town or not?
	Sywé:	Jèr lí chéng lǐtou hěn jìn.	This place is near town.
	Syān:	Nǐ jyā lí chéng lǐtou yě hěn jìn ma?	Is your home also close to town?
	Sywé:	Wǒ jyā lí chéng lǐtou bùhěn jìn.	My home isn't very close to town.
	Syān:	Fàgwo lí Dégwo hén ywǎn ma?	Is it very far from France to Germany?
	Sywé:	Fàgwo lí Dégwo bútài ywǎn.	It is not very far from France to Germany.
	Syān:	Fàgwo lí Jūnggwo ywǎn bùywǎn?	Is it far from France to China?

	Sywé:	Fàgwo lí Jūnggwo hěn ywǎn.	It is very far from France to China.
7.	Syān:	Lǐ Syānsheng dzěmma tsúng tā jyā dàu jèr lái?	How does Mr. Lǐ come here from his house?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syānsheng tsúng tā jyā kāi chìchē dàu jèr lái.	Mr. Lǐ comes here from his house by car.
	Syān:	Lǐ Syānsheng tsúng tā jyā dàu Jyòujīnshān yě kāi chìchē chyù ma?	Does Mr. Lǐ also go to San Francisco from his house by car?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Syānsheng tsúng tā jyā dàu Jyòujīnshān bùkāi chìchē chyù. Tā dzwò fēijī chyù.	Mr. Lǐ doesn't go from his house to San Francisco by car. He goes by airplane.
	Syān:	Jèige sywésyàude sywésheng dōu dzwò hwǒché tsúng jyāli dàu jèige sywésyàu lái ma?	Do all the students of this school come to school from their homes by train?
	Sywé:	Jèige sywésyàude sywésheng bùdou dzwò hwǒchē tsúng jyāli dàu jèige sywésyàu lái.	Not all the students of this school come to school from their homes by train.
	Syān:	Jèige sywésyàude sywésheng dzěmma tsúng jèr dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	How do the students of this school go to China from here?
	Sywé:	Jèige sywésyàude sywésheng dzwò chwán tsúng jèr dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	The students of this school go to China from here by boat.
8.	Syān:	Syīn sywésheng dōu gēn tāmende tàitai yíkwàr dàu jèr lái ma?	Do all the new students come here with their wives?
	Sywé:	Syīn sywésheng bùdōu gēn tāmende tàitai yíkwàr dàu jèr lái.	Not all the new students come here with their wives.
	Syān:	Nǐmen gēn bùgēn nǐmende jyějye, mèimei yíkwàr dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	Do you go to China with your elder and younger sisters or not?

	Sywé:	Wǒmen dōu bùgēn wǒmende jyějye, mèimei yíkwàr dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	We don't go to China with our elder and younger sisters.
	Syān:	Jāng Lyánjǎng dzěmma gēn tā tàitai yíkwàr dàu fàngwǎr chyù?	How does the Company Commander Jāng go to the restaurant with his wife?
	Sywé:	Jāng Lyánjǎng gēn tā táitai yíkwàr kāi chìchē dàu fàngwǎr chyù.	The Company Commander Jāng is driving to the restaurant with his wife.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě gēn tāmen yíkwàr dzwò chē chyù ma?	Are you also going with them in their car?
	Sywé:	Wǒ bùgēn tāmen yíkwàr chyù. Wǒ dzǒudàu fàngwǎr chyù.	I am not going with them them. I am going to the restaurant on foot.
9.	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng nǎr lái?	Where do you come from?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng Jyòujīnshān lái.	I come from San Francisco.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng Jyòujīnshān dzěmma dàu jèige sywésyàu lái?	How do you come from San Francisco to this school?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng Jyòujīnshān dzwò fēijī dàu jèigè sywésyàu lái.	I come from San Francisco to this school by airplane.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng nǎr dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	From where do you go to China?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng R̀běn dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	I go to China from Japan.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng R̀běn dzěmma dàu Jūnggwo chyù?	How are you going to China from Japan?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng R̀běn dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù.	I am going to China from Japan by boat.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng R̀běn dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù dzwò shémma?	What are you sailing to China from Japan for?

Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng R̀běn dzwò chwán dàu Jūnggwo chyù kàn péngyou.	I am sailing to China from Japan to see my friends.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

tsā	tsá	tsǎ	tsà	syāu,	syōu	syōu,	syāu
syā	syá	syǎ	syà	húng,	háng	háng,	húng
syōu	syóu	syǒu	syòu	tsǎu,	dzǎu	dzǎu,	tsǎu
tsēng	tséng	tsěng	tsèng	hèn,	hèng	hèng,	hèn
tsāng	tsáng	tsǎng	tsàng				
jyā	jyá	jyǎ	jyà				

2.

tā yàu chū	wǒ búyàu
tā yàu chwán	wǒ yàu chwán
tā yàu jyǒu	wǒ búyàu
tā yàu fàn	wǒ yàu fàn
hwǒchējàn	chìchējàn
yíkwàr dzǒu	yíkwàr chyù
dzwò hwǒchē	dzwò fēigī
búdzwò chwán	yàu dzwò chwán
tsúng nǎr chyù	tsúng nèr chyù
tsúng nǎr lái	tsúng nèr lái
tsúng fēijīchǎng lái	dàu Jūnggwo chyù
tsúng hwǒchējàn lái	dàu jyēshang chyù
tsúng chíchējàn lái	dàu chyántou chyù
tsúng Jyòujīnshān lái	dàu wàitou chyù

3. Wáng Syānsheng yàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu Měigwo lái. Tā bùsyǐhwan dzwò fēijī, syǐhwan dzwò chwán. Dzwò fēijī tái

gwèi. Dzwò chwán pyányi. Tā tàitai gēn tā yíkwàr dzwò chwán lái. Wǒ yàu dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù jyē tāmen. Wǒ syǐhwan dzwò hwǒchē chyù Jyòujīnshān. Tāmen gēn wǒ yíkwàr dzwò hwǒchē dàu wǒ jyā lái. Wǒ tàitai yàu dzwò Jūnggwo fàn chǐng tāmen chr̄.

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) My wife can't drive a car. I often drive her to town for shopping.

2) Mr. Wáng doesn't have a car. He rides with me to school everyday.

3) How about walking to the bus station? The bus station is close to here.

4) There is no boat from here to San Francisco. I am going to San Francisco by train.

5) He is going to China by boat. He doesn't like to go by airplane.

6) How do you go from here to Japan? Is it very far to Japan from here?

7) You go from here to San Francisco by train and from San Francisco to Japan by boat.

8) I go to Japan from here by airplane. Japan isn't close to America.

9) Japan is very interesting. I like very much to go there by boat.

10) I am going to the airport to meet my elder and younger sisters.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ tsúng nǎr lái?

2) Nǐ dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?

3) Nǐ tyāntyān dzěmma dàu jèr lái?

4) Nǐ tyāntyān gēn shéi yíkwàr dàu jèr lái?

5) Nǐ yǒu chìchē ma?

6) Nǐ hwèi kāi chē ma?

7) Nǐ jyā lí sywésyàu ywǎn buywǎn?

8) Nǐ cháng dzǒudau sywésyàu lái ma?

9) Nǐ jyā lí chéng lǐtou ywǎn buywǎn?

10) Nǐ cháng dzǒudau chéng lǐtou chyù ma?

11) Nǐ yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?

12) Nǐ yàu dzěmma dàu Jūnggwo chyù?

13) Nǐ syǐhwan dzwò fēijī dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?

14) Nǐ syǐhwan dzwò chwán dàu Jǎnggwo chyù ma?

15) Tsúng jèr dàu Jūnggwo chyù yǒu méiyou hwǒchē?

16) Jèr lí hwǒchējàn ywǎn buywǎn?

17) Jèr lí chìchējàn ywǎn buywǎn?

18) Nǐ hwèi kāi fēijī ma?

19) Kāi fēijī nán bunán?

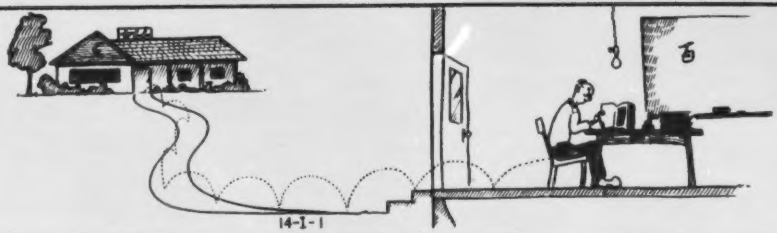
20) Nǐ syǐhwan kāi fēijī ma?

LESSON 14

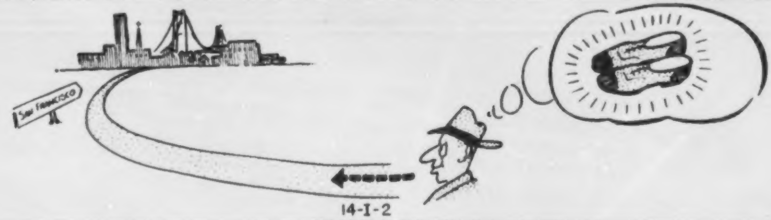
I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Nǐ tsǔng jyā lái ma?	Do you come from home?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng jyā lái.	I come from home.
	Syān:	Nǐ tsúng jyā dàu jèr lái dzwò shémma?	For what purpose are you coming here (from home)?
	Sywé:	Wǒ tsúng jyā dàu jèr lái nyànshū.	I come here from home to study.
2.	Syán:	Tā wèishémma yàu dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù?	Why is he going to San Francisco?
	Sywé:	Yīnwei tā yàu chyù mǎi yìshwāng syé.	Because he is going to buy a pair of shoes.
	Syān:	Wèishémma tā búyàu dzài jèr mǎi?	Why doesn't he want to buy them here?
	Sywé:	Yīnwei jèrde syé dōu bùhǎukàn.	Because all of the shoes here aren't good looking.
3.	Syān:	Nèiwèi shàngsyau chōuyān ma?	Does that Colonel smoke?
	Sywé:	Nèiwèi shàngsyàu chōuyān.	That Colonel smokes.
	Syān:	Nèiwèi shàngsyàu syìng shémma?	What is that Colonel's name?
	Sywé:	Nèiwèi shàngsyàu syìng Lǐ.	That Colonel's name is Lǐ.
	Syān:	Chōuyān de nèiwei shàngsyàu syǐng Lǐ ma?	Is the Colonel who is smoking named Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Chōuyān de nèiwei shàngsyàu syìng Lǐ.	The Colonel who is smoking is named Lǐ.

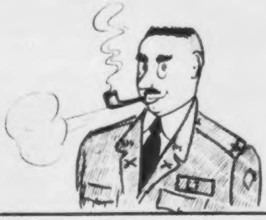
LESSON 14



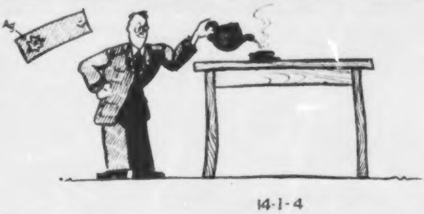
14-I-1


SAN FRANCISCO

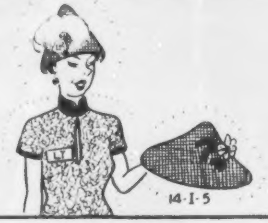
14-I-2



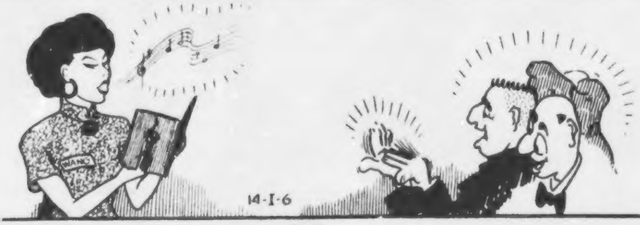
14-I-3



14-I-4



14-I-5



14-I-6

4.	Syān:	Jèiwèi jūngsyàu ài hē chá ma?	Does this Lieutenant Colonel like to drink tea?
	Sywé:	Jèiwèi jūngsyàu ài hē chá.	This Lieutenant Colonel likes to drink tea.
	Syān:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi jūngsyàu gāu bùgāu?	Is the Lieutenant Colonel who likes to drink tea tall?
	Sywé:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi jūngsyàu bùgāu.	The Lieutenant Colonel who likes to drink tea isn't tall.
5.	Syān:	Lǐ Tàitai syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshang ma?	Does Mrs. Lǐ like to wear Chinese clothes?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Tàitai syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshang.	Mrs. Lǐ likes to wear Chinese clothes.
	Syān:	Syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshang de nèiwèi tàitai shr̀ Lǐ Tàitai ma?	Is the lady who likes to wear Chinese clothes Mrs. Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshang de nèiwèi tàitai shr̀ Lǐ Tàitai.	The lady who likes to wear Chinese clothes is Mrs. Lǐ.
	Syān:	Lǐ Tàitai yě syǐhwan dài syīn màudz ma?	Does Mrs. Lǐ also like to wear new hats?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Tàitai yě syǐhwan dài syīn màudz.	Mrs. Lǐ also likes to wear new hats.
	Syān:	Ài dài syīn màudz de nèiwèi tàitai shr̀ Lǐ Tàitai ma?	Is the lady who likes to wear new hats Mrs. Lǐ?
	Sywé:	Ài dài syīn màudz de nèiwèi tàitai shr̀ Lǐ Tàitai.	The lady who likes to wear new hats is Mrs. Lǐ.
6.	Syān:	Wáng Syáujye ài chánggēr ma?	Does Miss Wáng like to sing?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syáujye ài chànggēr.	Miss Wáng likes to sing.

Syān:	Wáng Syáujye chàngde gēr hǎutīng ma?	Are the songs that Miss Wáng sings good to listen to?
Sywé:	Wáng Syáujye chàngde gēr hěn hǎutīng.	The songs that Miss Wáng sings are very good to listen to.
Syān:	Tāmen ài tīng Wáng Syáujye chàngde gēr ma?	Do they like to hear the songs that Miss Wáng sings?
Sywé:	Támen ài tīng Wáng Syáujye chàngde gēr.	They like to hear the songs that Miss Wáng sings.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Bái Shàusyàu yàu dàu chéng lǐtou chyù ma?	Is Major Bái going to town?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàusyàu yàu dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.	Major Bái is going to town.
	Syān:	Bái Shàusyàu yàu tsúng jèr chyù ma?	Is Major Bái going from here?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàusyàu yàu tsúng jèr chyù.	Major Bái is going from here.
	Syān:	Bái Shàusyàu tsúng jèr dàu chéng lǐtou chyù dzwò shémma?	For what purpose is Major Bái going from here to town?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàusyàu yàu dàu chéng lǐtou chyù mǎi yǐshang.	Major Bái is going to town to buy some clothes.
	Syān:	Bái Shàusyàu dzěmma tsúng jèr dàu chéng lǐtou chyù?	How is Major Bái going from here to town?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàusyàu tsúng jèr kāichē dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.	Major Bái is driving from here to town.
2.	Syān:	Lǐ Jūngsyàu dzwò shémma ne?	What is Lieutenant Colonel Lǐ doing?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Jūngsyàu syědz̀ ne.	Lieutenant Colonel Lǐ is writing.
	Syān:	Lǐ Jūngsyàu syěde dz̀ shr̀ shémma dz̀?	What kind of writing is Lieutenant Colonel Lǐ doing?
	Sywé:	Lǐ Jūngsyàu syěde dz̀ shr̀ Jūnggwo dz̀.	The writing that Lieutenant Colonel Lǐ is doing is Chinese.
3.	Syān:	Jāng Shàngsyàu dzwò shémma ne?	What is Colonel Jāng doing?
	Sywé:	Jāng Shàngsyàu chōuyān ne.	Colonel Jāng is smoking.

	Syān:	Jāng Shàngsyàu chōude yān shr̀ Jūnggwo yān ma?	Is the cigarette that Colonel Jāng is smoking a Chinese cigarette?
	Sywé:	Jāng Shàngsyàu chōude yān búshr̀ Jūnggwo yān.	The cigarette that Colonel Jāng is smoking isn't a Chinese cigarette.
	Syān:	Jāng Shàngsyàu chōude yān shr̀ shémma yān?	What kind of cigarette is the one that Colonel Jāng is smoking?
	Sywé:	Jāng Shàngsyàu chōude yān shr̀ Měigwo yān.	The cigarette that Colonel Jāng is smoking is an American cigarette.
4.	Syān:	Nèiwèi syáujye wèishémma yàu dàu nèige pùdz chyù?	Why is that young lady going to that store?
	Sywé:	Nèiwèi syáujye dàu nèr chyù mǎi yìshwāng syīn syé.	That young lady is going there to buy a pair of new shoes.
	Syān:	Tāde syé búshr syīnde ma?	Aren't her shoes new?
	Sywé:	Tāde syé búshr syīnde.	Her shoes are not new.
	Syān:	Nǐ kàn, tāde màudz hǎukàn bùhaukàn?	Look, is her hat beautiful?
	Sywé:	Tāde màudz hén hǎukàn.	Her hat is very beautiful.
	Syān:	Tāde yīshang yě hěn hǎukàn ma?	Are her clothes also very beautiful?
	Sywé:	Tāde yīshang yě hěn hǎukàn.	Her clothes are also very beautiful.
5.	Syān:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syānsheng hwèi chànggēr ma?	Can these two gentlemen sing?
	Sywé:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syānsheng hwèi chànggēr.	These two gentlemen can sing.

Syān:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syānsheng chàngde gēr hǎutīng ma?	Are the songs these two gentlemen sing good to listen to?
Sywé:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syānsheng chàngde gēr hǎutīng.	The songs these two gentlemen sing are good to listen to.
Syān:	Nǐ ài tīng tāmen chàngde gēr ma?	Do you like to listen to the songs they sing?
Sywé:	Wǒ ài tīng tāmen chàngde gēr.	I like to listen to the songs they sing.

6. Vocabulary

220.	chá	N:	tea
221.	chōuyān	VO:	smoke (cigarettes, etc.)
222.	chwān	V:	wear (coat, trousers, etc.)
223.	dài	V:	wear (hat, watch, etc.)
224.	hǎutīng	SV:	be good to listen to
225.	jūngsyàu	N:	lieutenant colonel (military)
226.	shàngsyàu	N:	colonel (military)
227.	shàusyàu	N:	major (military)
228.	-shwāng	M:	(for shoes, boots, socks, etc.)
229.	syé	N:	shoes
230.	tīng	V:	hear, listen to
231.	-wèi	M:	(polite for persons)
232.	wèishémma	MA:	why? for what (reason)?
233.	yīshang	N:	clothes
234.	yīnwei	MA:	because (of), for

III. Grammar Analysis

1. More Stative Verb Phrases

In lesson 10, some stative verb phrases were introduced. The following are more stative verb phrases composed of stative verbs such as hǎu (good), nán (difficult), or rúngyi (easy) with other verbs. These phrases behave like stative verbs.

hǎuting	musical, good to listen to
hǎuhē	good to drink
hǎuchwān	easy to wear
nántīng	unmusical, hard on the ear
nánhē	distasteful to drink
nánkàn	ugly
nánchwān	difficult to wear
rúngyitīng	easy to hear, easy to comprehend by hearing
rúngyihē	easy to take by drinking
rúngyikài	easy to operate on
rúngyichwān	easy to wear, easy to put on (clothing)

2. Moveable Adverbs wèishémma and yīnwei

Wèishémma (why) asks for the reason and yīnwei (because) gives the reason. Both of them are moveable adverbs in the sense that they may be put at the beginning of the sentence or immediately before the verb.

Wèishémma nǐ yàu chyù mǎi dūngsyi?	Why do you want to go shopping?
Nǐ wèishémma yàu chyù mǎi dūngsyi?	Why do you want to go shopping?

Yīnwei wǒ yǒu yìdyǎr chyán, wǒ yàu mǎi yígè màudz.	Because I have some money and I want to buy a hat.
Wǒ yīnwei yǒu yídyǎr cháyn, wǒ yàu mǎi yígè màudz.	Because I have some money and I want to buy a hat.

Translate the following:

1) Why do those two friends of yours want to go to China?
2) Because they like China.
3) Why does that boy want to buy a new car?
4) Because he has a lot of money.
5) Because a new car is easy to drive.
6) Why does Mr. Wáng want to go to San Francisco by train?
7) Because he doesn't have a car.
8) Because he doesn't know how to drive a car.
9) Why don't you go to Germany by airplane?
10) Because I don't have very much money.

3. Wèi as a Measure

Wèi is a special measure for people, and it is a polite form.

jèiwèi syānsheng	this teacher; this gentleman
nèiwèi tàitai	that lady (married)
jèiwèi jyūngwān	this officer

Nín yǒu jǐwèi gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei?	How many brothers and sisters do you have?

Wǒ yǒu yíge gēge, lyǎngge dìdi; méiyǒu jyějye, mèimei.	I have one elder brother and two younger brothers, but I don't have sisters.
Nèiwèi jyūngwān hěn tsūngming hěn nyánchīng.	That officer is intelligent and young.
Jèi lyǎngwèi jyūngwān: yíwèi shr̀ jūngsyàu, yíwèi shr̀ shàusyàu.	Of these two officers, one is a lieutenant colonel and one is a major.

4. Modifying Clauses

A modifier in Chinese takes the ending -de and stands before the noun it modifies. Therefore -de is an indicator showing the modifier before it and the noun after it. The modifier may be a one syllable word, a phrase or a clause.

1) stative verbe -de

hǎukànde màudz	good looking hat
bùshǎude rén	many people
hěn dàde jwōdz	a very large table

2) verb-de

chr̄de dūngsyi	food
hēde dūngsyi	drinks
láide rén	people arriving
dzǒude rén	people leaving
mǎide yīshang	clothes bought
chwānde syé	shoes worn

3) pronoun-de

wǒde chyán	my money
tāde byǎu	his watch
wǒmende shū	our books

4) subject-verb-de

tā chr̄de fàn	food he eats
tā dàide màudz	hat he wears

tā chàngde gēr	songs he sings
tā kāide chē	the car he drives
wǒ dzwòde fēijī	the airplane I ride on
nǐ gěide chyán	the money you give

5) verb-object-de

chànggērde (rén)	the man who sings, singer
dzwòfànde (rén)	the man who cooks, cook
kāichēde (rén)	the man who drives a car, driver
hējyǒude (rén)	the man drinking, alcoholic
màishūde (rén)	the man who sells books, book seller
hwàhwàrde (rén)	the man who paints, painter
shwōhwàde (rén)	the man who speaks, speaker
màibàude (rén)	the man who sells newspapers, news dealer
chōuyān de (rén)	the man smoking
jyāushūde (rén)	the man who teaches, teacher

In English a modifying clause starts with "who", "which", "what" or "that", etc. and stands after the noun modified. In translating a sentence having a modifying clause from Chinese to English, first find out the modifying clause by the indicator -de, then re-write the clause in the "who" or "which", etc., construction, and remember that the position of the modifying clause in relation to the modified noun in Chinese is different to that in English. The same holds true for translation from English to Chinese; only the process is reversed.

When a noun is already specified, as nèige rén, or both specified and numbered, as nèilyǎngge rén, the modifying clause usually stands in front of these specifying elements.

nèige rén	that man
chànggerde nèige rén	the man who is singing
chàng Jūnggwó gēr de nèige rén	the man who is singing a Chinese song
chàng Jūnggwó gēr de nèi lyǎngge rén	the two men who are singing a Chinese song

Translate the following:

1) The man who is eating is a Chinese.

2) The man who buys a rifle is my friend.

3) The lady who wears a hat is Mrs. Wáng.

4) The man who sings is Corporal Lǐ.

5) The man talking is my teacher.

6) I like the boy who sells newspapers.

7) The boy wants the book which you are reading.

8) I like the songs which that girl sings.

9) Give me the pen that you bought.

10) The two men wearing new clothes are officers.

11) The two young ladies reading newspapers are good looking.

IV. Recombination Dialogue

1.	Syān:	Shàngsyàu tsúng nǎr dàu sywésyàu lái?	From where does the Colonel come to school?
	Sywé:	Shàngsyàu tsúng jyā dàu sywésyàu lái.	The Colonel comes to school from home.
	Syān:	Shàngsyàu tsúng jyā dàu sywésyàu lái dzwò shémma?	For what purpose does the Colonel come from home to school?
	Sywé:	Shàngsyàu tsúng jyā dàu sywésyàu lái sywé Jūnggwo hwà.	The Colonel comes from home to school to learn Chinese.
	Syān:	Jūngsyàu tsúng nǎr dàu R̀běn chyù?	From where does the Lieutenant Colonel go to Japan?
	Sywé:	Jūngsyàu tsúng Jyòujīnshān dàu R̀běn chyù.	The Lieutenant Colonel goes to Japan from San Francisco.
	Syān:	Jūngsyàu wèishémma bùtsúng jèr dàu R̀běn chyù?	Why doesn't the Lieutenant Colonel go from here to Japan?
	Sywé:	Yīnwei tsúng jèr méiyǒu chwán dàu R̀běn chyù.	Because there is no boat from here to Japan.
	Syān:	Jūngsyàu tsúng jèr dàu R̀běn chyù dzwò shémma?	For what purpose does the Lieutenant Colonel go to Japan from here?
	Sywé:	Jūngsyàu tsúng jèr dàu R̀běn chyù jyē tā tàitai.	The Lieutenant Colonel goes from here to Japan to meet his wife.
2.	Syān:	Shàusyàu ài hē shémma chá?	What kind of tea does the Major like to drink?
	Sywé:	Shàusyàu ài hē tā tàitai dzwòde chá.	The Major likes to drink the tea that his wife makes.

	Syān:	Shàusyàu búaì hē tā péngyǒu dzwòde chá ma?	Doesn't the Major like to drink the tea that his friends make?
	Sywé:	Shàusyàu búaì hē tā péngyǒu dzwòde ché.	The Major doesn't like to drink the tea that his friends make.
	Syān:	Jūngsyàu chōu shémma yān?	What kind of cigarettes does the Lieutenant Colonel smoke?
	Sywé:	Jūngsyàu chōu nèiwèi shāngsyàu gěi tāde yān.	The Lieutenant Colonel smokes the cigarettes which the Colonel gives him.
	Syān:	Jūngsyàu bùchōu nèiwèi shàusyàu gěi tāde yān ma?	Doesn't the Lieutenant Colonel smoke the cigarettes which the Major gave him?
	Sywé:	Jūngsyàu bùchōu nèiwèi shàusyàu gěi tāde yān.	The Lieutenant Colonel doesn't smoke the cigarettes which the Major gave him.
	Syān:	Bái Shàngsyàu chwān shémma pùdz dzwòde yīshang?	Colonel Bái is wearing the clothes which are made by what store?
	Sywé:	Bái Shàngsyàu chwān Jūnggwó pùdz dzwòde yīshang.	Colonel Bái is wearing the clothes which are made by the Chinese store.
	Syān:	Nèige Jūnggwó pùdz dzwòde yīshang hǎu bùhǎu?	Are the clothes which are made by that Chinese store good?
	Sywé:	Nèige Jūnggwó pùdz dzwòde yīshang hěn hǎu.	The clothes which are made by that Chinese store are very good.
3.	Syān:	Lǐ Shàngsyàu dàide nèige byǎu hěn gwèi ma?	Is that watch which Colonel Lǐ is wearing very expensive?

Sywé:	Lǐ Shàngsyàu dàide nèige byǎu hěn gwèi.	That watch which Colonel Lǐ is wearing is very expensive.
Syān:	Tā hǎidz dàide byǎu gwèi búgwèi?	Is the watch which his child is wearing expensive?
Sywé:	Tā hǎidz dàide byǎu bútài gwèi.	The watch which his child is wearing isn't too expensive.
Syān:	Wáng Jūngsyàu chwānde nèishwāng syé hǎukàn bùhǎukàn?	Is that pair of shoes which Lieutenant Colonel Wáng is wearing good looking?
Sywé:	Wáng Jūngsyàu chwānde nèishwāng syé hěn hǎukàn.	That pair of shoes which Lieutenant Colonel Wáng is wearing is very good looking.
Syān:	Chwān R̀běn syéde nèiwèi jyūngwān shr̀ R̀běn rén ma?	Is that officer who wears Japanese shoes a Japanese?
Sywé:	Chwān R̀běn syéde nèiwèi jyūngwān shr̀ R̀běn rén.	That officer who wears Japanese shoes is a Japanese.
Syān:	Nǐ wèishémma bùtīng jèiwèi shàngsyàu shwōhwà?	Why don't you listen to this Colonel's talk?
Sywé:	Yīnwèi wǒ bùdǔng jèiwèi shàngsyàu shwōde hwà.	Because I can't understand what this Colonel says.
Syān:	Jèiwèi shàngsyàu shwōde hwà shr̀ shémma hwà?	What language does this Colonel speak?
Sywé:	Jèiwèi shàngsyàu shwōde hwà shr̀ Dégwo hwà.	The language that this Colonel speaks is German.
Syān:	Wèishémma nǐ bùtīng nèiwèi syáujye chànggēr?	Why don't you listen to that young lady's singing?

Sywé:	Yīnwei wǒ búài tīng nèiwèi syáujye chànggēr.	Because I don't like to listen to that young lady's singing.
Syān:	Nèiwèi syáujye chàngde gēr shr̀ búshr̀ Fàgwo gōr?	Are the songs that young lady sings French songs?
Sywé:	Nèiwèi syáujye chàngde gēr shr̀ Fágwo gēr.	The songs that young lady sings are French songs.
5. Syān:	Nèiwèi Jūnggwo shàusyàu wèishémma tsúng Jūnggwo dàu jèr lái?	Why does that Chinese Major come here from China?
Sywé:	Nèiwèi Jūnggwo shàusyàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu jèr lái jyāushū.	That Chinese Major comes here from China to teach.
Syān:	Nèiwèi Jūnggwo shàusyàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu jèr lái jyāu shémma?	What does that Chinese Major come here from China to teach?
Sywé:	Nèiwèi Jūnggwo shàusyàu tsúng Jūnggwo dàu jèr lái jyāu wǒmen Jūnggwo hwà.	That Chinese Major comes here from China to teach us Chinese.
Syān:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syáujye tsúng nǎr dàu Fágwo chyù?	From where are these two young ladies going to France?
Sywé:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syáujye tsúng Jyòujīnshān dàu Fàgwo chyù.	These two young ladies are going to France from San Francisco.
Syān:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syáujye tsúng Jyòujīnshān dàu Fàgwo chyù dzwò shémma?	For what business are these two young ladies going to France from San Francisco?
Sywé:	Jèi lyǎngwèi syáujye tsúng Jyòujīnshān dàu Fàgwo chyù mǎi yīshang.	These two young ladies are going to France from San Francisco to buy clothes.

6.	Syān:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi shàusyàu máng bumáng?	Is the Major who likes to drink tea busy?
	Sywé:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi shàusyàu hěn máng.	The Major who likes to drink tea is very busy.
	Syān:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi shàusyaùde tàitai tsúngming ma?	Is the wife of the Major who likes to drink tea intelligent?
	Sywé:	Ài hē chá de nèiwèi shàusyaùde tàitai tsūngming.	The wife of the Major who likes to drink tea is intelligent.
	Syān:	Chwān R̀běn yīshangde jèiwèi syáujye hǎukàn ma?	Is this young lady who wears Japanese clothes pretty?
	Sywé:	Chwān R̀běn yīshangde jèiwèi syáujye hǎukàn.	This young lady who wears Japanese clothes is pretty.
	Syān:	Chwān R̀běn yīshangde jèiwèi syáujye gāu bùgāu?	Is this young lady who wears Japanese clothes tall?
	Sywé:	Chwān R̀běn yīshangde jèiwèi syáujye bùgau.	This young lady who wears Japanese clothes isn't tall.
	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng chwānde nèishwāng syé shr̀ nǐde ma?	Are the shoes Mr. Wáng is wearing yours?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng chwánde nèishwāng syé shr̀ wǒde.	The shoes Mr. Wáng is wearing are mine.
	Syān:	Wáng Syānsheng chwānde nèijyàn yīshang shr̀ jyūnfú búshr̀?	Is the clothing that Mr. Wáng is wearing a uniform?
	Sywé:	Wáng Syānsheng chwānde nèijyàn yīshang búshr̀ jyūnfú.	The clothing that Mr. Wáng is wearing isn't a uniform.
7.	Syān:	Nǐmende bānjǎng dzài nǎr?	Where is your class monitor?

L. 14

	Sywé:	Wǒmende bānjǎng dzài jèigè wūdz lǐtou.	Our class monitor is in this room.
	Syān:	Jèigè wūdz lǐtoude sywésheng dǔng bùdǔng Jūnggwo hwà?	Do the students in this room understand Chinese?
	Sywé:	Jèigè wūdz lǐtoude sywésheng dǔng yìdyǎr Jūnggwo hwà.	The students in this room understand a little Chinese.
	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi nyàn hēibǎnshàngde nèigè dz̀ ma?	Can you read that character on the blackboard?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búhwèi nyàn hēibǎnshàngde nèigè dz̀.	I can't read that character on the blackboard.
8.	Syān:	Nèiwèi shàngsyàu tsúng Jyòujīnshān lái ma?	Does that Colonel come from San Francisco?
	Sywé:	Nèiwèi shàngsyàu tsúng Jyòujīnshān lái.	That Colonel comes from San Francisco.
	Syān:	Tsúng Jyòujīnshān láide nèiwèi shàngsyàu hwèi kāichē ma?	Can the Colonel who comes from San Francisco drive?
	Sywé:	Tsúng Jyòujīnshān láide nèiwèi shàngsyàu hwèi kāichē.	The Colonel who comes from San Francisco can drive.
9.	Syān:	Dàu R̀běn chyùde nèiwèi jūngsyàu ài tīng R̀běn gēr ma?	Does that Lieutenant Colonel who is going to Japan like to hear Japanese songs?
	Sywé:	Dàu R̀běn chyùde nèiwèi jūngsyàu ài tīng R̀běn gēr.	That Lieutenant Colonel who is going to Japan likes to hear Japanese songs.
	Syān:	Wèishémma nèiwèi jūngsyàu yàu dàu R̀běn chyù?	Why is the Lieutenant Colonel going to Japan?
	Sywé:	Yīnwèi nèiwèi jūngsyàu yàu dàu R̀běn dzwòshr̀ chyù.	Because he is going to Japan to work.

Syān:	Jèigè chwán yàu dàu R̀běn chyù ma?	Is this boat going to Japan?
Sywé:	Jèigè chwán yàu dàu R̀běn chyù.	This boat is going to Japan.

V. Pronunciation Drills

1.

hwāi	hwái	hwǎi	hwài	rēng, jēng	jēng, rēng
syū	syú	syǔ	syù	sywé, syé	syé, sywé
lyū	lyú	lyǔ	lyù	yǎn, ywǎn	ywǎn, yǎn
rēn	rén	rěn	rèn	hwài, hwèi	hwèi, hwài
rēng	réng	rěng	rèng		
rān	rán	rǎn	ràn		

2.

hē chá, hē jyǒu	hē jyǒu, hē chá
chr̄ fàn, chr̄ táng	chr̄ táng, chr̄ fàn
chwān syé, dài màudz	dài màudz, chwān syé
chwān jyūnfú, chwān yīshang	chwān yīshang, chwān jyūnfú
shàngsyàu gāu, jūngsyàu máng	jūngsyàu máng, shàngsyàu gāu
jūngsyàu dà, shàusyàu syǎu	shàusyàu syǎu, jūngsyàu dà
shàngsyàu shǎu, shàngwèi dwō	shàngwèi dwō, shàngsyàu shǎu
jūngsyàu lèi, jūngwèi hǎu	jūngwèi hǎu, jūngsyàu lèi

shàngsyàu, jūngsyàu, shàusyàu
shàngwèi, jūngwèi, shàuwèi
shàngshr̀, jūngshr̀, syàshr̀
shàngsyàu, shàngwèi, shàngshr̀
jūngsyàu, jūngwèi, jūngshr̀
shàusyàu, shàuwèi, syàshr̀

3. Wáng Shàngsyàu hěn ài chànggēr. Tā shwō tā chànggēr hěn hǎutīng. Kěshr̀ Wáng tàitai bùsyǐhwan tīng Wáng Shàngsyàu chàngde gēr. Wáng tàitai shwō Wáng Shàngsyàu chàngde

gēr hěn bùhǎutīng.

Lǐ Shàusyàu hěn ài chōuyān. Lǐ tàitai bùchōuyān, yě bùshyǐhwan Lǐ Shàusyàu chōuyān. Lǐ tàitai shwō yān tài gwèi. Lǐ tàitai ài chwān syīn yīshang. Lǐ Shàusyàu gēn Lǐ tàitai shwō, syīn yīshang tài gwèi, búyàu mǎi syīn yīshang, tyāntyān chwān jyòu yīshang.

Lǐ Shàusyàu gēn Lǐ tàitai shwō: "Wǒde chyán wǒ mǎi yān, nǐde chyán nǐ mǎi syīn yīshang."

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) The hat that my wife wants to buy is too expensive.

2) Is the tea you are drinking Chinese tea?

3) The wine that you are drinking is a French wine.

4) The car he drives is a German car.

5) The uniform you are wearing is very beautiful.

6) Colonel Jāng likes to listen to the songs that young lady sings.

7) Do you like the food that your wife prepares?

8) He is a German, and the cigarette he smokes is a German cigarette.

9) The French songs that lady sings are good to listen to.

10) I am going to San Francisco to buy some clothes, because clothes are cheap there.

2. Conversation

1) Nǐ chōuyān ma?

2) Nǐ syǐhwan chōu shémma yān?

3) Nǐ syǐhwan chōu Měigwo yān ma?

4) Jūnggwo rén dài màudz ma?

5) Jūnggwo syáujye dài màudz ma?

6) Syǎuháidz dàide màudz gwèi bugwei?

7) Nǐ ài hē chá ma?

8) Nǐ ài hē Jūnggwo chá búài?

9) Nǐ ài búài hē Rběn chá?

10) Nǐ hwèi chànggēr ma?

11) Nǐ hwèi chàng shémma gēr?

12) Nǐ chànggēr hǎutīng ma?

13) Wǒ syěde dz̀ hǎukàn bùhǎukàn?

14) Nǐ chwānde nèishwāng syé shr̀ syīnde ma?

15) Nǐ chwānde nèishwāng syé gwèi búgwèi?

16) Nǐmen nyànde shū rúngyi dǔng ma?

17) Nǐ tàitai dzwòde fàn hǎuchr̄ ma?

18) Nǐ chwānde yīshang shr̀ jyūnfú ma?

19) Nǐ tàitai mǎide syīn yīshang gwèi búgwèi?

20) Lǐ Shàngsyàu shwōde hwà rúngyi dǔng ma?

LESSON 15

I. Structural Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Yìnyán yǒu jǐge ywè?	How many months are there in a year?
	Sywé:	Yìnyán yǒu shrèrge ywè.	There are twelve months in a year.
	Syān:	Yíge ywè yǒu jǐge lǐbài?	How many weeks are there in a month?
	Sywé:	Yíge ywè yǒu sžge lǐbài.	There are four weeks in a month.
	Syān:	Yíge lǐbài yǒu jǐtyān?	How many days are there in a week?
	Sywé:	Yíge lǐbài yǒu chītyān.	There are seven days in a week.
2.	Syān:	Yìnyánde shrèrge ywè nǐ dōu hwèi shwō ma?	Can you name all the twelve months in a year?
	Sywé:	Wǒ hwèi shwō: Yīywè, Èrywè, Sānywè, Sz̀ywè, Wǔywè, Lyòuywè, Chīywè, Báywè, Jyǒuywè, Shŕywè, Shryīywè, Shrèrywè.	I can name them: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November and December.
	Syān:	Yíge lǐbài yǒu něi chītyān?	What seven days are there in a week?
	Sywé:	Yíge lǐbài yǒu: Lǐbàityān, Lǐbàiyī, Lǐbàièr, Lǐbàisān, Lǐbàisz̀, Lǐbàiwǔ, Lǐbàilyòu.	There are Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Saturday in a week.
3.	Syān:	Jīntyān shr̀ Lǐbàijǐ?	What day of the week is today?
	Sywé:	Jīntyān shr̀ Lǐbàisz̀.	Today is Thursday.
	Syān:	Jīntyān shr̀ jǐywè jǐhàu?	Which day of which month is today?

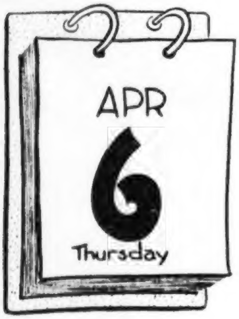
LESSON 15

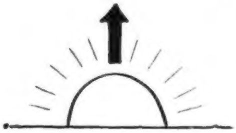
JAN	FEB	MAR	APR
MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG
SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC

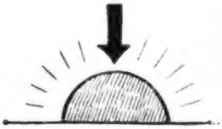
JANUARY

SUN	MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	SAT
					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24 31	25	26	27	28	29	30

15-I-1,2







15-I-3

L. 15

Sywé:	Jīntyān shr̀ Sz̀ywè lyòuhàu.	Today is April 6th.
Syān:	Nǐmen tyāntyān dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you come to school everyday?
Sywé:	Wǒmen bùtyāntyān dàu sywésyàu lái.	We don't come to school everyday.
Syān:	Něityān nǐmen dàu sywésyàu lái?	Which days do you come to school?
Sywé:	Tsúng Lǐbàiyī dàu Lǐbàiwǔ, wǒmen dàu sywésyàu lái.	We come to school Monday through Friday.
Syān:	Nǐmen wǎnshang yě dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you come to school in the evenings too?
Sywé:	Wǒmen wànshang búdàu sywésyàu lái.	We don't come to school in the evenings.
4. Syān:	Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà de rén dōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Can all those who can speak Chinese write Chinese characters?
Sywé:	Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà de rén bùdōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž.	Not all those who can speak Chinese can write Chinese characters.
Syān:	Hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž de rén dōu hwèi nyàn Jūnggwo shū ma?	Can all those who can write Chinese characters read Chinese books?
Sywé:	Hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž de rén dōu hwèi nyàn Jūnggwoshū.	All those who can write Chinese characters can read Chinese books.
Syān:	Ài hē chá de rén dōu ài chōuyān ma?	Do all those who like to drink tea like to smoke?
Sywé:	Ài hē chá de rén bùdōu ài chōuyān.	Not all those who like to drink tea like to smoke.
5. Syān:	Syǐhwan mǎi syīn yīshang de rén yé syǐhwan mǎi syīn màudz ma?	Do those who like to buy new clothes also like to buy new hats?

	Sywé:	Syǐhwan mǎi syīn yīshang de rén yé syǐhwan mǎi syīn màudz.	Those who like to buy new clothes like to buy new hats too.
	Syān:	Ài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn de rén yé hwèi dzwò Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Can those who like to eat Chinese food cook Chinese food too?
	Sywé:	Ài chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn de rén bùdōu hwèi dzwò Jūnggwo fàn.	Not all those who like to eat Chinese food can cook Chinese food.
6.	Syān:	Dzài jèige sywésyàu nyànshūde sywésheng dōu dzài jèr chr̄fàn ma?	Do all the students studying in this school eat here?
	Sywé:	Dzài jèige sywésyàu nyànshūde sywésheng bùdōu dzài jèr chr̄fàn.	Not all the students studying in this school eat here.
	Syān:	Dàu jèr láide rén yě yàu dàu nèr chyù ma?	Do those who come here want to go there too?
	Sywé:	Dàu jèr láide rén yě yàu dàu nèr chyù.	Those who come here want to go there too.
	Syān:	Hǎukànde háidz dōu hěn tsūngming ma?	Are all good-looking children very intelligent?
	Sywé:	Hǎukànde háidz bùdōu hěn tsūngming.	Not all good-looking children are very intelligent.

II. Basic Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Jīntyān shr Lǐbàijǐ?	What day of the week is today?
	Sywé:	Jīntyān shr Lǐbàisān.	Today is Wednesday.
	Syān:	Jīntyān shr jǐywè jǐhàu?	What day of the month is today?
	Sywé:	Jīntyān shr Jyǒuywè chīhàu.	Today is September 7th.
	Syān:	Nǐmen tyāntyān dàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Do you come to school every day?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùtyāntyān dàu sywésyàu lái.	We don't come to school every day.
	Syān:	Lǐbàilyòu, Lǐbàityān nǐmen búdàu sywésyàu lái ma?	Don't you come to school on Saturdays and Sundays?
	Sywé:	Lǐbàilyòu, Lǐbàityān wǒmen búdàu sywésyàu lái.	We don't come to school on Saturdays and Sundays.
	Syān:	Nǐmen wǎnshang dàu búdàu sywésyàu lái?	Do you come to school in the evenings?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen wǎnshang búdàu sywésyàu lái.	We don't come to school in the evenings.
	Syān:	Nǐmen tyāntyān wǎnshang dàu nǎr chyù?	Where do you go every evening?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen wǎnshang dzài jyā nyànshū.	We study at home in the evenings.
	Syān:	Lǐbàilyòu, Lǐbàityān nǐmen cháng dàu nǎr chyù?	Where do you often go on Saturdays and Sundays?
	Sywé:	Lǐbàilyòu, wǒmen cháng dàu jyēshang chyù mǎi dūngsyi, Lǐbàityān cháng dàu péngyǒu jyālǐ chyù.	We often go downtown shopping on Saturdays, visiting friends on Sundays.
7.	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?	Can you speak Chinese?

	Sywé:	Wǒ hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà.	I can speak Chinese.
	Syān:	Ní yě hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Can you also write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Wó yě hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž.	I can write Chinese characters too.
	Syān:	Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng dōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž ma?	Can all the students who can speak Chinese write Chinese characters too?
	Sywé:	Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng bùdōu hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž.	Not all the students who can speak Chinese can write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nèige hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà yě hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž de sywésheng shr̀ nǐ ma?	Are you the student who can both speak Chinese and write Chinese characters?
	Sywé:	Nèige hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà yě hwèi syě Jūnggwo dž de sywésheng shr̀ wǒ.	I am the student who can both speak Chinese and write Chinese characters.
	Syān:	Nǐ hwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu ma?	Can you read Chinese newspapers?
	Sywé:	Wǒ búhwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu.	I can't read Chinese newspapers.
	Syān:	Nèigè búhwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu de sywésheng shr nǐ ma?	Are you the student who can't read Chinese newspapers?
	Sywé:	Nèigè búhwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu de sywésheng shr wǒ.	I am the student who can't read Chinese newspapers.
3.	Syān:	Nǐ chōuyān ma?	Do you smoke?
	Sywé:	Wǒ chōuyān.	I smoke.
	Syān:	Nǐ yě ài hējyǒu ma?	Do you like to drink too?
	Sywé:	Wǒ yě ài hējyǒu.	I like to drink too.

L. 15

Syān:	Ài chōuyān yě ài hējyǒude nèige rén shr nǐ ma?	Are you the one who likes both to smoke and to drink?
Sywé:	Ài chōuyān yě ài hējyǒude nèige rén shr wǒ.	I am the one who likes both to smoke and to drink.
Syān:	Ài chōuyānde rén dōu ài hējyǒu ma?	Do all those who like to smoke like to drink?
Sywé:	Ài chōuyānde rén bùdōu ài hējyǒu.	Not all those who like to smoke like to drink.
Syān:	Màiyānde dōu ài chōuyān ma?	Do all the cigarette dealers like to smoke?
Sywé:	Màiyānde bùdōu ài chōuyān.	Not all the cigarette dealers like to smoke.
Syān:	Màijyǒude yě bùdōu ài hējyǒu ma?	Don't all the wine dealers like to drink too?
Sywé:	Màijyǒude yě bùdōu ài hējyǒu.	Not all the wine dealers like to drink either.

4. Vocabulary

235.	dzǎushàng	(MA) N:	morning
236.	èrshŕ	NU:	twenty
237.	èrshryī	NU:	twenty-one
238.	-hàu	M:	day (of month); number (of house, room, telephone, etc.)
239.	jīntyān	(MA) N:	today
240.	lǐbài	N:	week
241.	-nyán	M:	year
242.	shŕèr	NU:	twelve
243.	shŕyī	NU:	eleven
244.	-tyān	M:	day
245.	wǎnshàng	(MA) N:	evening
246.	ywè	N:	month

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Numbers From 11 to 99

a) Numbers from 11 to 19 are built on the pattern:

shŕyī	eleven	(ten one)
shŕèr	twelve	(ten two)
shŕjyǒu	nineteen	(ten nine)

b) Tens from 20 to 90 are like the English pattern:

èrshŕ	twenty	(two-tens)
sānshŕ	thirty	(three-tens)
jyǒushŕ	ninety	(nine-tens)

c) The other numbers from 21 to 99 also follow the English pattern:

èrshŕyī	twenty-one	(two-tens one)
sānshŕèr	thirty-two	(three-tens two)
jyǒushŕjyǒu	ninety-nine	(nine-tens nine)

In a number of more than one digit, *lyǎng* is not used for "two", but *èr* is used.

lyǎnggė rén	two men
shŕèrběn shū	twelve books
èrshŕèrgė sywésheng	twenty-two students
jyǒushŕèrgė bīng	ninety-two soldiers

2. Inquiring Dates

Since dates in Chinese are given by adding a number to words like *ywè* (month), *hàu* (day of the month) or lǐbài (week), the dates are inquired by using the word jǐ (what number, which) in the places where the number should be. Jǐ in this case takes no measure, otherwise it means "how many."

jǐywè?	which month?
Wǔywè	May
jǐhàu?	what day of the month?
shŕwǔhàu	the fifteenth
Lǐbàijǐ	which day of the week?
Lǐbàiyī	Monday
jǐge ywè?	how many months?
jǐtyān?	how many days?
jǐge lǐbài?	how many weeks?
jǐnyán	how many years?

. Modifying Clauses of a General Nature and a Specific Nature

A modifying clause in a sentence of a general nature is often with dōu and that of a specific nature is often with specifier. The specifier either stands in front of the modifying clause or after it and precedes the specifying elements.

Ài hējyǒude rén dōu ài chōuyān ma?	Do all who like to drink like to smoke?
Nèigè ài hējyǒude rén ài chōuyān ma?	Does that person who likes to drink like to smoke?
Ài hējyǒude nèige rén ài chōuyān ma?	Does that person who likes to drink like to smoke?

L. 15

4. Clauses Become Nouns

A few modifying clauses which describe a more or less permanent condition or aspect, have become fused into single words which function as nouns. These correspond to certain English nouns ending in -er, -or, etc.

màijyǒude	wine dealer	jyāushūde	teacher
màiyānde	cigarette dealer	syěshūde	author
màishūde	book dealer	dzwòfànde	cook

IV. Recombination Dialogues

1.	Syān:	Yígè lǐbài yǒu jǐtyān?	How many days are there in a week?
	Sywé:	Yígè lǐbài yǒu chītyān.	There are seven days in a week.
	Syān:	Yígè ywè yǒu dwōshǎu tyān?	How many days are there in a month.
	Sywé:	Yígè ywè yǒu sānshŕtyān.	There are thirty days in a month.
	Syān:	Yìnyán yǒu dwōshǎuge lǐbài?	How many weeks are there in a year?
	Sywé:	Yìnyán yǒu wǔshŕèrgè lǐbài.	There are fifty-two weeks in a year.
	Syān:	Tsúng yíhàu dàu shŕhàu nǐ hwèi shwō ma?	Can you name the days from the first to the tenth?
	Sywé:	Tsúng yíhàu dàu shŕhàu wǒ hwèi shwō: yíhàu, èrhàu, sānhàu, sz̀hàu, wǔhàu, lyòuhàu, chíhàu, báhàu, jyǒuhàu, shŕhàu.	I can name the days from the first to the tenth: first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth and tenth.
	Syān:	Tsúng syŕyīhàu dàu èrshŕhàu nǐ hwèi búhwèi shwō?	Can you name the days from the eleventh to the twentieth?
	Sywé:	Tsúng shŕyīhàu dàu èrshŕhàu wǒ hwèi shwō: shŕyīhàu, shŕèrhàu, shŕsānhàu, shŕsz̀hàu, shŕwǔhàu, shŕlyòuhàu, shŕchīhàu, shŕbāhàu, shŕjyǒuhàu, èrshŕhàu.	I can name the days from the eleventh to the twentieth: eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, and twentieth.
	Syān:	Tsúng èrshŕyīhàu dàu sānshŕhàu ní yě hwèi shwō ma?	Can you also name the days from the twenty-first to the thirtieth?

	Sywé:	Wó yě hwèi shwō: èrshŕyīhàu, èrshŕèrhàu, èrshŕsānhàu, èrshŕsz̀hàu, èrshŕwǔhàu, èrshŕlyòuhàu, èrshŕchīhàu, èrshŕbāhàu, èrshŕjyǒuhàu, sānshŕhàu.	I can name them: twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, and thirtieth.
	Syān:	Jīntyān shr̀ jǐhàu, Lǐbàijǐ?	What day of the week and what day of the month is today?
	Sywé:	Jīntyān shr̀ báhàu, Lǐbàiwǔ.	Today is Friday, the eighth.
	Syān:	Nǐ jǐywè, jǐhàu, Lǐbàijǐ dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù?	What day, what month, what day of the week are you going to San Francisco?
	Sywé:	Wǒ Shŕèrywè sānshŕyīhàu Lǐbàiyī dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù.	I am going to San Francisco on Monday, December 31st.
2.	Syān:	Jèrde sywésheng chwānde syé dōu hěn syīn ma?	Are the shoes worn by students here new?
	Sywé:	Jèrde sywésheng chwānde syé bùdōu hěn syīn.	Not all the shoes worn by students here are new.
	Syān:	Jèrde sywésheng dàide màudz dōu hěn hǎukàn ma?	Are all the hats worn by students here good looking?
	Sywé:	Jèrde sywésheng dàide màudz dōu hěn hǎukàn.	All the hats worn by students here are good looking.
	Syān:	Jèrde sywésheng chàngde gēr dōu hěn hǎutīng ma?	Are all the songs sung by students here good to listen to?
	Sywé:	Jèrde sywésheng chàngde gēr bùdōu hěn hǎutīng.	Not all the songs sung by students here are good to listen to.

Syān:	Ài hē Jūnggwo chá de rén dōu ài chōu Jūnggwo yān ma?	Do all those who like to drink Chinese tea like to smoke Chinese cigarettes?
Sywé:	Ài hē Jūnggwo chá de rén bùdōu ài chōu Jūnggwo yān.	Not all those who like to drink Chinese tea like to smoke Chinese cigarettes.
Syān:	Syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshangde syáujye dōu hwèi dzwò Jūnggwo yīshang ma?	Can all the ladies who like to wear Chinese clothes make Chinese clothes?
Sywé:	Syǐhwan chwān Jūnggwo yīshangde syáujye bùdōu hwèi dzwò Jūnggwo yīshang.	Not all the ladies who like to wear Chinese clothes can make Chinese clothes.
Syān:	Búdài Jūnggwo màudz de rén yě bùchr̄ Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Those who don't wear Chinese hats don't eat Chinese food too, do they?
Sywé:	Búdài Jūnggwo màudz de rén bùdōu bùchr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	Some of those who don't wear Chinese hats eat Chinese food.
Syān:	Dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng dōu shr̀ Měigwo rén ma?	Are all students studying Chinese here Americans?
Sywé:	Dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng dōu shr̀ Měigwo rén.	All the students studying Chinese here are Americans.
Syān:	Tsúng jèr dàu nèrde fángdz dōu shr̀ wǒmen sywésyàude fángdz ma?	Are all the buildings from here to there our school buildings?
Sywé:	Tsúng jèr dàu nèrde fángdz dōu shr̀ wǒmen sywésyàude fángdz.	All the buildings from here to there are our school buildings.
Syān:	Nèrde fēijī dōu shr̀ dàu Jyòujīnshān chyùde fēijī ma?	Are all the airplanes there going to San Francisco?

	Sywé:	Nèrde fēijī bùdōu shr̀ dàu Jyòujīnshān chyùde fēijī.	Not all the airplanes there are going to San Francisco.
3.	Syān:	Yǒu jyā de rén dzǎushang wèishémma dōu búchyù hē chá?	Why don't all the people with families go to tea in the morning?
	Sywé:	Yǒu jyā de rén dzǎushang dōu búchyù hē chá, yīnwei tāmen dzài jyāli hē chá.	All the people with families don't go to tea because they have tea at home.
	Syān:	Wèishémma dzài jèr jyāushūde syānsheng wǎnshang bùcháng dàu jyēshang chyù?	Why don't the teachers here go downtown in the evenings often?
	Sywé:	Dzài jèr jyāushūde syānsheng wǎnshang bùcháng dàu jyēshang chyù, yīnwei tāmen dōu hěn lèi.	The teachers teaching here don't go downtown in the evenings often because they are all very tired.
4.	Syān:	Nǐmen jīntyān dzǎushang sywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr ma?	Are you going to learn Chinese songs this morning?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen bùjīntyan dzǎushang sywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr.	Not this morning.
	Syān:	Nǐmen něityan sywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr?	Which day do you learn to sing Chinese songs?
	Sywé:	Wǒmen Lǐbàiwú wǎnsheng sywé chàng Jūnggwo gēr.	We learn to sing Chinese songs Friday evenings.
	Syān:	Yíywè yíhàu shr̀ Lǐbàijǐ?	What day of the week is January 1st?
	Sywé:	Yíywè yíhàu shr̀ Lǐbàièr.	January 1st is a Tuesday.
	Syān:	Shŕèrywè èrshrwǔhàu shr̀ Lǐbàilyòu búshr̀?	Is December 25th a Saturday or not?

Sywé:	Shŕèrywè èrshrwǔhàu búshr̀ Lǐbàilyòu. Nèityān shr̀ Lǐbàiyī.	December 25th isn't a Saturday. That day is a Monday.
5. Syān:	Dzài jèigè sywésyàu jyāushūde syānsheng dōu yǒu něigwō rén?	What are the nationalities of the instructors who teach at this school?
Sywé:	Dzài jèigè sywésyàu jyāushūde syānsheng yǒu Jūnggwo rén, R̀běn rén, Fàgwo rén, yé yǒu Dégwo rén.	There are among the teachers teaching at this school, Chinese, Japanese, French and Germans.
Syān:	Nǐmen nyànde shū dōu shr̀ shéi syěde shū?	Who wrote the books you are reading?
Sywé:	Wǒmen nyànde shū dōu shr̀ jyāu wǒmende syānsheng syěde shū.	The books that we are reading were all written by the teachers teaching us.
Syān:	Syānsheng gěi nǐmende Jūnggwo míngdz nǐmen syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan?	Do you like the Chinese names that the teachers gave us?
Sywé:	Syānsheng gěi wǒmende Jūnggwo míngdz wǒmen dōu hěn syǐhwan.	We like all the names that the teachers have given us.
Syān:	Nǐmen tyāntyān sywéde dūngsyi dōu hěn rúngyi ma?	Are all the things you learn everyday very easy?
Sywé:	Wǒmen tyāntyān sywéde dūngsyi bùdōu hěn rúngyi. Jūnggwo dz̀ hěn nánsyě.	The things we learn everyday are not all easy. Chinese characters are very difficult to write.
Syān:	Sywésyàu gěi nǐmende Jūnggwo shū gēn shūpù màide Jūnggwo shū dōu hěn yǒuyìsz ma?	Are all the Chinese books given to you by the school and the Chinese books sold by the book store very interesting?

Sywé:	Sywésyàu gěi wǒmende Jūnggwo shū gēn shūpù màide Jūnggwo shū dōu hěn yǒuyìsz.	All the Chinese books given to us by the school and the Chinese books sold by the book store are very interesting.
Syān:	Chángchang hējyǒude sywésheng shwōde Jūnggwo hwà hǎu bùhǎu?	Do the students who drink often speak good Chinese?
Sywé:	Chángchang hējyǒude sywésheng shwōde Jūnggwo hwà dōu bútài hǎu.	All the students who drink often don't speak Chinese too well.
Syān:	Dàu jèr lái nyànshūde sywésheng dōu shr̀ jyūngwān ma?	Are all the students coming here to study officers?
Sywé:	Dàu jèr lái nyànshūde sywésheng bùdōu shr̀ jyūngwān. Wǒmen jèr yǒu shàngsyàu, jūngsyàu, shàusyàu, shàngwèi, jūngwèi, shàuwèi, shr̀gwānjǎng, shàngshr̀, jūngshr̀, syàshr̀ yě yǒu hěn dwō bīng.	Not all the students coming here to study are officers. We have colonels, lieutenant colonels, majors, captains, first lieutenants, second lieutenants, master sergeants, sergeants first class, sergeants and corporals here, and we also have very many privates.
Syān:	Yǒu tàitai de sywésheng dōu búdzai sywésyàu chr̄fàn ma?	Do none of the students having wives eat at school?
Sywé:	Yǒu tàitai de sywésheng dzǎushang dzài sywésyàu chr̄fàn, wǎnshang dzài jyā chr̄fàn.	The students with wives eat at school in the morning, but eat at home in the evening.
Syān:	Nǐmen chwānde chènshān, syé, gēn nǐmen dàide màudz dōu jyàu jyūnfú ma?	Are all the shirts, shoes and hats you are wearing called uniforms?

Sywé:	Wǒmen chwānde chènshān, syé, gēn wǒmen dàide màudz dōu jyàu jyūnfú.	All the shirts, shoes and hats we are wearing are called uniforms.
Syān:	Sywésyàu lǐtoude pùdz gēn chéng lǐtoude pùdz dōu mài jyūnfú ma?	Do both the store at school and the stores in town sell uniforms?
Sywé:	Sywésyàu lǐtoude pùdz gēn chéng lǐtoude pùdz dōu mài jyūnfú.	Both the store at school and the stores in town sell uniforms.
Syān:	Dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng dōu dàu Jūnggwo chyù dzwòshr̀ ma?	Do all the students studying Chinese here go to China to work?
Sywé:	Dzài jèr sywé Jūnggwo hwà de sywésheng dàu Jūnggwo chyù dzwòshr̀ yě dàu R̀běn chyù dzwòshr̀.	The students studying Chinese here go to China and also go to Japan to work.
Syān:	Dzài R̀běn dzwòshr̀de Měigwo rén dōu gēn tāmende fùchin, mǔchin, gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei dzài yíkwàr ma?	Do all the Americans working in Japan have their fathers, mothers, elder and younger brothers, elder and younger sisters with them?
Sywé:	Dzài R̀běn dzwòshr̀de Měigwo rén bùdōu gēn tāmende fùchin, mǔchin, gēge, dìdi, jyějye, mèimei dzài yíkwàr.	Not all the Americans working in Japan have their fathers, mothers, elder and younger brothers and elder and younger sisters with them.
Syān:	Tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo chyùde fēijī gēn tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo chyùde chwán, dōu hěn gwèi ma?	Are both the airplanes going from America to China and the boats going from America to China very expensive?

L. 15

Sywé:	Tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo chyùde fēijī gēn tsúng Měigwo dàu Jūnggwo chyùde chwán, dōu hěn gwèi.	Both the airplanes going from America to China and the boats going from America to China are expensive.
Syān:	Syèsye, dzàijyàn.	Thank you. Goodbye!
Sywé:	Búkèchi, dzàijyàn.	You're welcome! Goodbye!

V. Pronunciation Drills

1. tsz̄ tsź tsž tsz̀ jyā, jyār jyār, jyā

sz̄ sź sž sz̀ dá, dár dár, dá

r̄ ŕ ř r̀ dyǎn, dyǎr dyǎr, dyǎn

yī yí yǐ yì hwà, hwàr hwàr, hwà

jāur dár shǒur jèr

dōur hóur nǎr nèr

jyār yúr bǎr jìngr

hwār lyúr hwěr wèr

gēr ywár dyǎr yìr

2. sānhàu, shŕhàu, jyǒuhàu, sz̀hau èrhau, wǔhau, báhau, sānhau

Sānywe, Shŕywe, Jyǒuywe, Sz̀ywe Èrywe, Wǔywe, Báywe, Sānywe

Lǐbàiyī, Lǐbàièr, Lǐbàisān Lǐbàisān, Lǐbàièr, Lǐbàiyī

Lǐbàisz̀, Lǐbàiwǔ, Lǐbàilyòu Lǐbàilyòu, Lǐbàiwǔ, Lǐbàisz̀

Lǐbài, Lǐbàityān, Lǐbàijǐ Lǐbàijǐ, Lǐbàityān, Lǐbài

Sānywè, sāngė ywè Jyǒuywè, jyǒugė ywè

jǐywè, jǐge ywè Wǔywè, wǔgė ywè

Lǐbàijǐ, jǐge lǐbài Lǐbàilyòu, lyòugė lǐbài

Lǐbàijǐ, Lǐbàièr jǐgè lǐbài, lyǎngge lǐbài

jǐywè jǐhàu Chíywe chíhàu

jǐhàu Lǐbàisān báhàu Lǐbàisān

L. 15

Lǐbàisz̀ jǐhàu	Lǐbàisz̀ jyǒuhàu
chíhàu Lǐbàijǐ	chíhàu Lǐbàièr
Lǐbàijǐ lyòuhàu	Lǐbàiyī lyòuhàu

3. Yíge lǐbài yǒu chītyān.	Yíge ywè yǒu sz̀ge lǐbài.
Yìnyán yǒu shŕèrgè ywè.	Yìnyán yǒu wǔshŕèrge lǐbài.

Yīywè, Sānywè, Wǔywè, Chíywè, Báywè, Shŕywè dōu yǒu sānshryī tyān. Shŕèrywè yě yǒu sānshryī tyān. Sz̀ywè, Lyòuywè, Jyǒuywè dōu yǒu sānshŕ tyān. Shŕyīywè yě yǒu sānshŕ tyān. Èrywè yǒu dwōshǎu tyān? Lǐbàityān nǐ dàu sywésyau chyù ma? Lǐbàiyī dàu Lǐbàiwǔ wǒ dàu sywésyau chyù. Lǐbàilyòu gēn Lǐbàityān wǒ dōu búchyù.

309

VI. Translation and Conversation

1. Translation

1) I go to school in the mornings Monday through Friday.

2) I go downtown shopping in the mornings Saturday and Thursday.

3) I study at home in the evenings Monday through Friday.

4) I go to see my friends in the evenings Saturday and Sunday.

5) I am going to San Francisco on Monday, October 10th.

6) I am going to China to work in June.

7) I invite you to come to my house for a Chinese meal on Friday evening.

8) What day of the month and what day of the week are you going to New York?

9) The young lady who is singing is my girl friend.

10) Do all the bookdealers like to read?

2. Conversation

1) Jīntyān shr̀ Lǐbàityān ma?

2) Něi jǐtyān nǐ dàu sywésyàu lái?

3) Nǐ wǎnshang yě dàu sywésyàu lái ma?

4) Nǐ cháng dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù ma?

5) Nǐ dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù dzwò shémma?

6) Jyòujīnshān yǒu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr ma?

7) Nǐ syǐhwan dzài Jyòujīnshānde Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chr̄fàn ma?

8) Jyòujīnshān Jūnggwo fàngwǎrde fàn hǎuchr̄ ma?

9) Jyòujīnshān yǒu méiyǒu Jūnggwo bàu?

10) Nǐ hwèi kàn Jūnggwo bàu ma?

11) Màibàude dōu hwèi kànbàu ma?

12) Nǐ chwānde yīshang shr̀ jyūnfú búshr̀?

13) Měigwo shàngsyàu dàide màudz shr̀ Jūnggwo màudz ma?

14) Jèrde sywésheng dōu chwān jyūnfú ma?

15) Chwān jyūnfú de rén dōu shr̀ jèrde sywésheng ma?

16) Jèrde Jūnggwo nyǔsyānsheng dōu chwān Jūnggwo
syé ma?

17) Jīntyān shr̀ jǐywè jǐhàu?

18) Jīntyān shr̀ Lǐbàijǐ?

19) Yìnyán yǒu jǐge ywè?

20) Yíge ywè yǒu jǐge lǐbài?

21) Yíge lǐbài yǒu jǐtyān?

22) Jèige ywè yǒu dwōshau tyān?

VOCABULARY

A

			Lesson
ài	AV:	like or love to	7

B

bā	NU:	eight	6
bān	N/M:	squad (military), class section/measure for squad, class, etc.	7
bānjǎng	N:	squad leader, class monitor	7
bàu	N:	newspaper	1
-běn	M:	books	4
bǐ	N:	pen, pencil; any writing instrument	1
bìsyìng	IE:	my (humble) name is	7
bīng	N:	soldier	3
bú-,bù-	P:	(negative prefix to verbs and adverbs)	1
búkéchì	IE:	you're welcome	7
bùchyāng	N:	rifle	2
byǎu	N:	watch	1

C

chá	N:	tea	14
cháng	SV:	be long	10
cháng(cháng)	A:	often,	12
chàng	V:	sing	8
chànggēr	VO:	sing songs	8
chē	N:	any wheeled vehicle	10
chènshān	N:	shirt	4
chéng	N:	city	12
chéng lǐtou (chénglǐ)	N:	downtown (inside the city)	12
chī	NU:	seven	6
chìchē	N:	automobile, car	10
chìchejàn	N:	bus station or stop	12
chǐng	V:	invite, request	12
	V:	please	7
chōuyān	VO:	smoke (cigarettes, etc.)	14
chr̄	V:	eat	5
chwān	V:	wear; put on (clothes)	14
chwán	N:	boat, ship	13
chyānbǐ	N:	pencil	4
chyán	N:	money	1

chyántou	N:	front	11
chyāng	N:	small arms	2
chyù	V:	go	12

D

dà	SV:	be big, large	9
dài	V:	wear, put on (hat, watch, etc.)	14
dàu	CV:	to (towards)	12
-de	P:	(N and V suffix indicating modification)	4
Dégwo	N:	Germany (Deutschland)	6
dìdi	N:	younger brother	8
dōu	A:	all, both	5
dūngsyi	N:	thing	8
dǔng	V:	understand	8
dwō	SV:	be much, many	10
dwōshau	NU:	how much? how many?	6
dz̀	N:	word (written character)	6
dzài	V:	be at, in, or on	11
	CV:	at, in, or on	11
dzàijyàn	IE:	goodbye!	6
dzǎu	IE:	good morning	2
dzǎushang	(MA)N:	morning	15
dzěmma	A:	how?	13
dzǒu	V:	walk	13
dzwò	V:	do, make, cook	7
dzwò	V:	ride or (sit on)	13
	CV:	go by	13
dzwòshr̀	V:	to work	10

E

èr	NU:	two	6
èrshŕ	NU:	twenty	15
èrshŕyī	NU:	twenty-one	15

F

Fàgwo	N:	France, French	3
fàn	N:	food (cooked rice)	5
fàngwǎr	N:	restaurant	10
fángdz	N:	house, building	2
fēijī	N:	airplane	13
fēijīchǎng	N:	airport	12
fùchin	N:	father	8

G

gāngkwēi	N:	helmet	4
gāu	SV:	be tall, high	9
gēge	N:	elder brother	8

gē(r)	N:	song	8
-ge	M:	single person or thing	4
gěi	*V:*	*give*	7
gēn	CV:	with	9
gūnggùng-chìchē	N:	bus	13
gwèi	SV:	be expensive	9
gwèisyìng	IE:	what is your (sur)name?	7

H

hǎu	SV:	be good, well	1
hǎu buhǎu	IE:	how about (it)?	12
hǎuchr̄	SV:	be good to eat	10
hǎukàn	SV:	be goodlooking	9
hǎutīng	SV:	be good to listen to, pretty	14
-hàu	M:	day (of month); number (of house, room, etc.)	15
hē	V:	drink	12
hēibǎn	N:	blackboard	11
hěn	A:	very; quite	9
hòutou	N:	back	11
hwà	N:	speech (spoken words); language	6
hwàr	N:	picture	2
hwèi	AV:	can, know how to	6
hwǒchē	N:	train	13
hwǒchejàn	N:	railroad station	12

J

-jāng	M:	(measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.)	6
jèi	SP:	this	1
jèr	N:	here	11
jǐ-	NU:	how many? (answer usually implies only a few)	6
jīntyan	(MA)N:	today	15
jìn	SV:	be near	13
jř	N:	paper	2
jūng	N:	clock	1
Jūnggwo	N:	China	2
jūngshr̀	N:	sergeant (military)	4
jūngsyàu	N:	lieutenant colonel (military)	14
jungwèi	N:	first lieutenant (military)	4
jwōdz	N:	table	2
jyā	N:	home	8
-jyàn	M:	article, piece, item	10
jyāu	V:	teach	12
jyāushū	VO:	teach	12
jyàu	EV:	is called, named	8
jyē	V:	meet (people at a train, boat, etc.)	12

jyēshang	N:	downtown; on the street	11
jyějye	N:	elder sister	8
jyǒu	NU:	nine	6
jyǒu	N:	wine or liquor	12
jyǒugwǎr	N:	wine shop, bar	12
jyòu	SV:	be old (not new)	10
Jyòujīnshān	N:	San Francisco	13
jyūnfú	N:	uniform	10
jyūngwān	N:	officer (armed forces)	3

K

kāi	V:	open; start away (train, bus, ship); operate (car)	13
kàn	V:	look; look at; read	7
kěshr	MA:	but, however	8
-kwài	M:	dollar	6
	M:	piece (lit. lump)	6

L

lái	V:	come	12
lǎu	SV:	be old (in years)	10
lèi	SV:	be tired	9
lí	CV:	from (be separated or distant from)	13
lǐbài	N:	week	15
lǐtou	N:	inside	11
lǐngdài	N:	necktie	4
lùjūnfùnyǔdwèi	N:	Women's Army Corps (WAC)	6
lyán	N/M:	company (military)/for company	7
lyánjǎng	N:	company commander	7
lyǎng-	NU:	two	5
lyòu	NU:	six	6

M

ma	P:	(sentence suffix to simple questions)	1
mǎi	V:	buy	5
mài	V:	sell; sell for	5
máng	SV:	be busy	9
màudz	N:	hat	2
méi	P:	(negative particle for yǒu)	3
méiyǒu, méiyou	V:	don't have, haven't	3
méiyìsz	SV:	be dull	9
Měigwo	N:	America (U.S.A.)	2
mèimei	N:	younger sister	8
-men	BF:	(noun suffix indicating plural forms of nouns referring to human beings)	5
mén	N:	door	1

míngdz	N:	given name	8
mǔchin	N:	mother	8

N

nán-	N:	male (of persons)	5
nán	SV:	be difficult	9
nǎr	N:	where?	11
ne	P:	(sentence suffix indicating continuance of state or action)	11
něi-	SP:	which?	7
nèi	SP:	that; the other	1
nèr	N:	there	11
nǐ	N:	you (sing)	1
nín	N:	polite for nǐ	7
-nyán	M:	year	15
nyánchīng	SV:	be young	10
nyàn	V:	read aloud; study	6
Nyǒuywē	N:	New York	13
nyǔ-	N:	female (of persons)	5

P

péngyou	N:	friend	5
-pù	N:	-store, -shop	12
pùdz	N:	store	12
pyányi	SV:	be inexpensive	9

R

R̀běn	N:	Japan	6
rén	N:	person	3
rúngyi	SV:	be easy	9

S

sān	NU:	three	6
shàngtou	N:	above, top	11
shangshr̀	N:	sergeant first class (military)	4
shàngsyàu	N:	colonel (military)	14
shàngwèi	N:	captain (military)	3
shǎu	SV:	be little (in quantity); few	10
shàusyàu	N:	major (military)	14
shàuwèi	N:	second lieutenant (military)	4
shéi	N:	who?	3
shémma	N:	what?	2
shǒuchyāng	N:	pistol	2
shŕ	NU:	ten	6
shŕèr	NU:	twelve	15
shŕyī	NU:	eleven	15
shr̀	EV:	is, are (equals)	1

shr̀(ching)	N:	affair; undertaking	10
shr̀gwānjǎng	N:	master sergeant (military)	4
shū	N:	book	1
shù	N:	tree	1
-shwāng	M:	(for shoes books, socks, etc.)	14
shwō	V:	say, speak	6
sùng	V:	escort, see off	12
syàshr̀	N:	corporal (military)	5
syàtou	N:	below, bottom	11
syànbīng	N:	MP	4
syānsheng	N:	Mr., sir, teacher; (polite for husband)	2
syáujye	N:	Miss; younglady	3
syǎu	SV:	small	9
(syǎu)háidz	N:	child	5
syé	N:	shoes	14
syě	V:	write	6
syèsye	V:	thanks, thank you	3
syǐhwan	AV:	like to	7
syīn	SV:	be new	10
syìng	EV:	be surnamed	7
sywé	V:	learn	7
	AV:	learn to	7
sywésheng	N:	student	2
sywésyàu	N:	school	10
sz̀	NU:	four	6

T

tā	N:	he, she, him, her	3
tài	A:	too, excessively	10
tàitai	N:	Mrs., madam; (polite for wife)	3
táng	N:	sugar, candy	7
tīng	V:	hear, listen to	14
tsūngming	SV:	be intelligent	9
tsúng	CV:	from	13
-tyān	M:	day	15
tyāntyān	MA/N:	every day	11

W

wàitou	N:	outside	11
wǎnshang	(MA)N:	evening	15
-wèi	M:	(polite for persons)	14
wèishémma	MA:	why? (for what reason?)	14
wǒ	N:	I, me	3
wūdz	N:	room	11
wǔ	NU:	five	6

Y

yān	N:	cigarette, tobacco	4

⌜àu	V:	want	5
	AV:	want to	5
⌜àushr	N:	key	4
⌜ě	A:	also, too	8
⌜ī	NU:	one	5
⌜īshang	N:	clothes	14
⌜íkwàr	A:	together	13
⌜ǐdz	N:	chair	2
⌜ìdyǎr	N:	a little, a bit; some	6
⌜īnwei	MA:	because (of), for	14
⌜ǒu	V:	have, has	3
⌜ǒuyìsz	SV:	be interesting	9
⌜wǎn	SV:	be far	13
⌜wè	N:	month	15

U.S.GPO:1978-789-088/7891